

## Intermediate II

Before you head off to advanced studies here at IMABI, you will need to first go through an additional 50 lessons at the intermediate level.

ちゅうきゅう

### 中 級 II: Intermediate II

第151課: Direction Intransitives + を: 向く

第152課: Fix/Error: ～忘れる, ～直す, ～間違える, & ～誤る

第153課: Used to, Together, Completely: ～慣れる, ～合う・合わせる, & ～切る

第154課: Adverbs III: Syntax Agreement

第155課: Onomatopoeia 擬声語 I: Giongo 擬音語 I

第156課: Plants & Animals

第157課: Onomatopoeia 擬声語 II: 擬音語 II: Animal Sounds

第158課: Onomatopoeia 擬声語 III: 擬態語 & 擬情語

第159課: ～中: During/Throughout

第160課: The Body

第161課: Colors

第162課: Food

第163課: Astronomy: The Planets & More

第164課: Or

第165課: Adjective Nominalization I: ～さ & ～み

第166課: Adjective Nominalization II: ～く

第167課: が VS を

第168課: Idioms I: 気

normal

第169課: Conjunctions

第170課: Negative Prefixes: 未, 無, 非, 否, & 不

第171課: Counters VII: Prefixes/Suffixes with Counters: 何～, 幾～, 数～, ～数, 半～, ～半, ～余, & ～余り

第172課: Good At & Bad At

第173課: Like & Love

第174課: Hate

第175課: Old

第176課: やはり & さすが

第177課: せっかく & わざわざ

第178課: せめて

第179課: Idioms II: Basic Expressions

第180課: Noun → Verb with *Suru* する

第181課: The Suffix 化

第182課: About: ～について, ～に関して, & ～をめぐって

第183課: The Particle しも

第184課: ～である II: With を

第185課: 語尾 III: かな, かしら, じゃん, い, け, が, こと, たら, & や

第186課: The Particle て III

第187課: The Particle も II

第188課: Obligation: つもり, はず, & ～べきだ

第189課: ～ずつ & ～わりで

normal

[第190課: The Auxiliary Verb ～ず I](#)

[第191課: Pronouns III: Reflexive Pronouns](#)

[第192課: Numbers VI: Ordinal Numbers](#)

[第193課: Counters VIII: 基, 滴, 票, 件, 行, 画, 種 \(類\), 脚, 着, 膳, 貫, 対, 男, & 女](#)

[第194課: Adjectives IV: Adjective Stems in Compounds](#)

[第195課: Counters IX: Counters with ケ・カ](#)

[第196課: Idioms III: The Body](#)

[第197課: The Grammaticality of Adjective +です](#)

[第198課: Adjectives: Sound Changes](#)

[第199課: Adjectives: Other Forms](#)

[第200課: Interjections](#)

## 第151課: Direction Intransitives + を: 向く

There are a handful of verbs in Japanese that handle direction. Of these, the first verbs that come to mind are words like 行く (to go), 来る (to come), 歩く (to walk), and 走る (to run).

The particles that are naturally associated with these verbs are に and へ, but most intrinsically に. The use of these particles indicate that these verbs are 自動詞 (intransitive verbs) as opposed to 他動詞 (transitive verbs).

However, it is not the case that all direction verbs are intransitive. For example, consider the following verbs:

- 指す (to point)

1. コンパスの<sup>し し ん ほくせい さ</sup>指針が北西を指した。

The compass needle pointed northwest.

- 指差す (to point at)

2. 彼女は玄関先に置かれた花瓶<sup>かのじょ げんかんさき お かびん ゆびさ</sup>を指差した。

She pointed at the vase placed at the front door.

normal

- 見る (to see/look)

3. ちゃんと前を見て注意しながら歩いてください。  
Please walk while paying attention by properly looking in front of you.

- 探す (to search)

4. 公園の端っこのほうを搜すと見つかるかもしれない。  
You might find it if you search the edge of the park.

- 向ける (to turn towards)

5. 事実と道理に背を向ける。  
To turn one's back on facts and logic.

- 目指す (to aim/head for)

6. 与党も野党も大筋同じ方向を目指している。  
The ruling party and the opposition party are both aiming roughly in the same direction.

These six verbs demonstrate that although verbs of direction may mostly be intransitive, there are a few handfuls that are in fact transitive. What this demonstrates is that “direction” can at times be conceptualized as the “object” of a verb rather than just a destination point.

In this lesson, we will learn about how the particle を is used with one intransitive verb of direction in particular: 向く. Although it has the transitive form 向ける, 向く is frequently seen paired with を. The verb itself has a handful of meanings, each presenting clarity as to how particles work with it.

Other semantically similar verbs behave similarly to 向く, and so upon fully studying 向く and its important derivatives, we'll spend some time looking at this grammar phenomenon with other examples.

## The Verb 向く & Its Derivatives

### を向く

The verb 向く is one of only three verbs of direction that seemingly behave as transitive verbs with the case particle を despite being intrinsically intransitive. The remaining two verbs are 振り向く (to turn around) and 振り返る (to look/think back (on)), but both of these verbs overlap semantically with 向く. The thought process as to why を is allowed with these verbs comes from the fact that the action carried out—shift in direction—isn't so much

normal

an objective change of state, but rather a subjective action done by the agent; it is this direction of sense, if you will, that allows 向く to behave like a transitive verb as most transitive verbs in Japanese imply an active agent causing the action in question to occur. By proxy, this affects 振り向く and 振り返る as we will also look at in further detail.

を向く can be used even with non-volitional agents. In other words, even if the doer of the action isn't necessarily doing the act of turning out of its own volition, the particle を is still overwhelmingly used. When the agent is overtly purposely doing the act of turning, then を becomes obligatory.

For を向く to be grammatical, the “object” must be one that can be conceptualized as a direction word. If it can't, it will need to take のほう (the direction of).

め うえ む とき かんが とき  
7. 目が上を向いている時は、考えをまとめている時です。

When one's eyes are facing up, it's when one is gathering one's thoughts.

おも せんふうき した む  
8. 重さで扇風機が下を向いてしまいます。

The fan faces downward due to its weight.

した む  
9. 下を向くな。

Don't look down.

**Grammar Note:** The を seen in Exs. 7-9 can be interpreted as the を seen with intransitive verbs of movement, making its usage obligatory in situations such as theses.

まうし む きのぼ  
10. ナマケモノは真後ろを向いたまま、木登りができる。

Sloths can climb trees whilst still facing right behind them.

ほんどの うみ む た  
11. 本殿が海を向いて建っている。

The main shrine is built towards the sea.

いしや む かんじゃ む しごと  
12. 医者のほうを向いてではなく、患者さんのほうを向いて仕事をしたい。

I want to work turned towards the patients and not towards the physician.

ぼく えみこ む ことば  
13. 僕はふいと笑美子さんのほうを向いて言葉をかけた。

I suddenly turned toward Emiko and spoke to her.

こくばん む き ちゅうしん じゅぎょう こどもたち しゅうちゅう ながつづ  
14. 黒板を向いて聞くことが中心の授業では、子供達の集中も長続きしません。

In classes centered around listening whilst facing the board, the children's concentration won't last long either.

## The Transitive Verb 向ける

When moving something into a certain direction, however, the direction becomes an indirect object, thus requiring the transitive form 向ける to be used.

15. 謙太郎が、左の扇風機を下に、右の扇風機を右に向けた。  
けんたろう ひだり せんふうき した みぎ せんふうき みぎ む

Kentaro pointed the fan on the left downward and the fan on the right to the right.

16. 人ばかり写るので、カメラレンズを上に向けた。  
ひと うつ うえ む

Because only people would be in the picture, I pointed the camera lens upward.

It is also the case that 向ける can follow direction words, and when it does, it implies explicit active will on the part of the agent in turning that said direction.

17. 皆が左を向いたとき、あなただけ右を向けるか。  
みな ひだり む みぎ む

Only you turn to the right when everyone turns to the left?

**Sentence Note:** In Ex. 17 above, the first clause uses 向く with no implied nuance of the subject “everyone” truly purposely orienting to the left, but the second clause uses 向ける, which does imply that the subject “you” are purposely orienting yourself to the right.

---

## に向く

It goes without saying that the original particle that has always been paired with 向く has been に. This makes sense as even in English, the word “toward(s)” usually follows “to turn.” The destination/direction of the orientation of the subject is emphasized with the use of に, and consequently, there isn't an implied active agent. Lastly, the state that に向く describes must be one that will or is ongoing.

18. 新月の頃は、地球の太陽に照らされた面が、ほぼ月のほうに向いている。  
しんげつ ころ ちきゅう たいよう て めん つき む

In a new moon, the side of the Earth that is illuminated by the Sun is roughly pointed towards the Moon.

**Sentence Note:** In Ex. 18, the side of the Earth illuminated by the sun is not purposely oriented toward the moon. This statement is a simply fact of observation being made about a natural phenomenon.

19. 私の関心はいつも未来に向いている。  
わたし かんしん みらい む

My interests are always directed to the future.

しゅじんこう あし む ほのお も ひろ  
normal 主人公の足の向くところには 炎が燃え広がっていた。

Flames spread where the protagonist's feet headed.

**Grammar Note:** The phrase 足が向く, alternatively seen as 足の向く when modifying a noun phrase as is the case in Ex. 20, uses the particle が before 向く only because no direction-noun is stated. If there were, it would be marked with に or へ.

しごとがら ほんや い びじゅつほん あしむ  
21. 仕事柄、本屋に行くと、美術の本のコーナーに足が向く。

Because of my work, when I go to a book store, my feet head for the fine arts corner.

いえむ すこ ななむ  
22. 家の向きが少し斜めに向いている。

The aspect of the house is slightly tilted.

There is a particular usage of に向く that is unique to it and not shared with を向く—or へ向く which is to be showcased next—is being synonymous with 〜に適している, “to be suited/apt/fit for...”

むひと とくちょう なに  
23. アナウンサーに向いている人の特徴は何でしょうか。

What are the characteristics of someone who's fit for announcing.

むすこむ  
24. うちの息子は物書きに向いていない。

My son is not cut out for writing.

だれいま しごと おも けっか で じぶん しごとむ  
25. 誰しも、今の仕事で思うような結果が出ないと、「自分はこの仕事に向いていないので  
は」という疑問が頭をよぎったりする。

Whenever one doesn't get the results that one thought at one's current job, the question as to whether “one is suited for the job” will cross anyone's mind.

かれたいけい すいえいむ  
26. 彼の体型は水泳に向いている。

His build is suited for swimming.

---

## へ向く

へ向く is largely synonymous with the first sense of に向く, but it is especially when one wishes to express a change in orientation that is heading away from an original position.

なえぎたいようほうむ せいちょう  
27. 苗木が太陽の方へ向いてぐんぐんと成長している。

The saplings are growing steadily toward the sun.

きみほうがくあしむ  
28. 君はどっちの方角へ足が向くかね。

normal |der which direction you'll head for.

ちゅうごく しせん いま べいこく む  
29. 中国の視線は今、米国へ向いている。  
China's gaze is currently pointed toward America.

がい む いしき うちがわ む しごと やわ  
30. いつも外へ向いている意識を内側に向け、仕事のストレスを和らげましょう。  
Point your awareness which is always pointed outward inward and alleviate your work stress.

**Grammar Note:** Ex. 30 demonstrates how へ向く, and by proxy に向く are suitable for when 向く is used with abstract subjects. を向く would, in fact, be incorrect.

---

### Differences Matter

Given that を向く, に向く, へ向く, and ～を (～に) 向ける aren't exactly the same, it's only natural that they can all occur at the same time. Ex. 19 is an example of all four of these forms used in tandem.

じょうはんしん みぎ む みぎ む じかん なが からだ しょうめん む  
31. 上半身を右に向けて、この右に向いた時間が長いほど、インパクトで体が正面を向  
じかん いっしゅん すばや ひだり む  
いている時間は一瞬で、素早く左へ向いていくというのがポイントです。  
The point is to point your upper body to the right, and the longer it's pointed to the right, the time the body points to the front at impact becomes instantaneous, at which point the body swiftly faces leftward.

---

### The Intransitive Verb 向かう

Another verb that derives from 向く is 向かう. It's a combination of 向く and the archaic auxiliary verb ぶ, which is used to express a continuous state. 向かう means "to face" or "to go towards." Even still, there is a subtle nuance that once one "faces" or "heads toward" X that the state will last for a certain length of time, or that the change in orientation will have a measurable duration. This verb is solely intransitive and either takes the particles に or へ, but never を.

おおがた たいふうじゅうごう にほん む  
32. 大型の台風 15 号が日本へ向かっている。  
Large-scale Typhoon #15 is heading toward Japan.

ふゆ む てんき  
33. 冬に向かっているのに、なんていいお天気！  
Although we're heading to winter, what great weather it is (today)!

にゅういん もとだいてりょう かいほう む  
34. 入院のブッシュ元大統領、快方に向かう  
Hospitalized Former President Bush Getting Better

normal



## The Suffixes ～向き & ～向け

The suffixes ～向き and ～向け are very similar, but there are a few subtle differences that ultimately make the latter far more commonly used. Don't let commonality, though, confuse you into never using the former as it is necessary in its own circumstances, which are detailed first below.

### The Suffix ～向き

The first usage of ～向き is to mean “facing” when attached to literal direction words such as 東 (east) and 南 (south).

35. 食器棚にお皿やコップを入れる時、下向きに置いた方がいいのでしょうか。  
Is it best to place themes bottom up when putting up plates and cups in the cupboard?

36. せっかく新しい家に住むのなら、明るい南向きがいい。  
If you're going to go through the trouble of living in a new home, one facing the bright southerly direction would be best.

37. 私のように今ネガティブな思考をしている方も、前向きになりたいと思ったことがあります。  
People who, like me, think negatively now should have had a moment where they wanted to become positive.

**Phrase Note:** 前向き literally means “facing forward” and is usually used in the sense of being “positive/proactive.”

Another usage of ～向き is being equivalent to ～に適した (suited/apt/fit for...). This usage is also seen in the phrase 向き不向き, which means “being cut out for certain things and not for others.” It is implied that the suitability is naturally so.

38. 安心して暮らせる学生向きの物件を数多く扱っています。  
We handle a vast number of properties suited for students to be able to live with peace of mind.

39. この小説は偶然にも、日本語を勉強している外国人向きでもある。  
This novel is coincidentally also suited for foreigners who are studying Japanese.

40. これは韓国人向きの辛口ビールです。  
This is a spicy beer suited for Koreans.

normal

しごと む ふ む  
41. 仕事に向き不向きってあるんですか。  
Is there such thing as some things being cut or not cut out for you in jobs?

---

### The Suffix ～向け

Similarly, ～向け is used to indicate that something has been tailored towards something/someone. Essentially, it indicates a target. For instance, 日本向けの商品 means “merchandise tailored/targeted for Japan.”

しょしんしゃむ きょうかしょ か  
42. 初心者向けのIMABIの教科書を買いたい。  
I wish I could buy an IMABI textbook made for beginners.

にほん す とき きょうようばんぐみ み  
43. 日本に住んでいた時は、大人向けの教養番組をいつも見ていた。  
When I lived in Japan, I always watched educational programs made for adults.

すげもとそうりだいじん ぜんこくむ えんぜつ  
44. 菅元総理大臣はいくつかの全国向けテレビ演説をしました。  
Prime Minister Kan made several nation-wide televised speeches.

### **Other Mentions: 振り向く, 振り返る, & 注目する**

#### 振り向く

In the sense of “to draw interest in...”, 振り向く is used with the particle に. Otherwise, in the sense of meaning “to look back at,” it is always used with the particle を.

きょうみ ふ む め あ きょうみ ふ む  
45. 興味のあることには振り向いて目を合わせますが、興味のないことには振り向きもしないことは、日常でもよくあることです。  
Giving attention and making eye contact with things that are not interesting but not giving a bit of attention to things that aren't interesting is something that often happens in the ordinary.

す ひと ひと む  
46. あなたの好きな人がどんな人に振り向くのかりサーチしましょう。  
Research the kind of person the person you like gives attention to!

ひ あさ むすこ がっこう おく だ む かお さいご  
47. あの日の朝、息子を学校に送り出したとき、こちらを振り向いた顔がまさか最後になるとは思いませんでした。  
That morning when I sent off my son to school, I had no idea that the face he gave me when looking back would be his last.

## 振り返る

に振り返る is used in the sense of “to look back at” in a literal sense due to something (noises, etc.) whereas を振り返る is used in a figurative sense as in “to think back on.”

はいご きみょう ものおと ふ かえ  
48. 背後の奇妙な物音に振り返った。  
I turned around at the strange sounds in the back.

おどろ ばくはつおん ふ かえ  
49. 驚きながら爆発音に振り返った。  
I turned around surprised at the noise of the explosion.

ごじゅうねんいじょう むかし ふ かえ  
50. 50 年以上の昔を振り返る。  
To think back on olden times over fifty years ago.

---

## 注目する

In Standard Japanese grammar, 注目する (to notice) is used with the particle に. It is synonymous with 目を向ける, which makes it clear why it would take に. However, because it is semantically very similar to other verbs like 見る (to see/look), 注視する (to gaze steadily), and 監視する (to monitor) which all take を, some speakers do happen to say を 注目する. It is important to reiterate, though, that に注目する is still the true, correct form.

がめんひだりした ちゅうもく  
51. 画面左下 {に・△を} 注目する。  
Notice the bottom left of the screen.

こんご ちゅうもく  
52. 今後どうなるか {に・△を} 注目してください。  
Please pay attention to what becomes of it from now on.

まいにち ちゅうもく  
53. 毎日ツイート {に・△を} 注目してください。  
Please pay attention to tweets every day.

いりょうぎょうかい な ゆ ちゅうし ちゅうもく  
54. 医療業界の成り行きを {注視・△ 注目} する。  
To observe the development of the medical care industry.

がめん みぎした ちゅうもく  
55. 画面の右下 {に・△を} 注目してないよね。  
normal aren't paying attention to the bottom right of the screen, huh.

## 第153課: ~慣れる, ~合う・合わせる, & ~切る

This lesson continues on with intermediate compound verb endings.

**Grammar Note:** 来る can only be used with the following patterns: 来慣れる (to be used to coming to) and 来合わせる (to make one's appearance). If you think about the meanings of these phrases as they are discussed, this will make sense to you.

### ~慣れる

慣<sup>な</sup>れる, an 一段 verb, means "to get used to" and may also mean "to domesticate", which is in essence animals getting used to human control. 慣れる is intransitive and is used as a compound ending to show an inclination to liking or being accustomed to something.

1. この街には住み慣れました。  
I got used to living in this town.
2. 彼は都市の生活に慣れることができなかった。  
He couldn't get used to living in the city.
3. 通学に慣れるのは重<sup>じゅうよう</sup>要です。  
It is important that you become used to commuting to school.
4. コンピューターは使い慣れるのは時間がかかります。  
It takes time to get used to the computer.
5. 彼は旅<sup>たび</sup>慣れている。  
He's well-traveled.
- 6a. 日本料理 {は、・を} 食べ慣れました。  
6b. 日本料理に慣れました。(もっと自然)  
I've gotten used to eating Japanese food.
7. 私は人前で話<sup>ひとまえ</sup>すことに慣れていません。  
I am not used to speaking in front of people.
8. 日本<sup>てんこう</sup>の天候に慣れる。  
To get used to Japanese weather.
9. まだ明るさに慣れてねー。(碎<sup>くだ</sup>けた言い方)  
normal eyes) are still not adjusted to the light.

10. 寵愛ちょうあいに慣れるのはだめですよ。  
It is no good to be over-familiar with attention.
- 

**Orthography Note:** なれる may be written as 狎れる when specifically referring to domestication.

## ～合う・合わせる

合う shows how something "fits". In compounds it shows "to...with each other". So, there is someone else with you doing the same action. Essentially, ～合う shows people doing something with each other--reciprocal action. The object(s) of the sentence must be similar.

The causative form 合わせる may show that one makes something into one, looks into differences, reciprocally does, or does something all of a sudden.

11. ロミオとジュリエットは愛し合っていた。  
Romeo and Juliet loved each other.

12. 誘さそい合わせる。  
To invite each other.

13. 彼らは宿題てっだを手伝い合った。  
They helped each other with homework.

14. 犯行現場はんこうげんばに居合わせました。  
I was present at the crime scene.

15. 何時に待ち合わせようか？  
What time shall we meet?

16. 彼と彼女は君が代よを歌い合っていた。？  
彼と彼女は君が代と一緒に歌っていた。○  
He and she sang [Kimigayo](#) with each other.

**Culture Note:** 君が代きみ　よ is the national anthem (国歌こっか) of Japan.

17. 二人で聖書せいしょを読み上げ合いました。  
The two read aloud the bible with each other.

- normal 彼らは想いおもを打ち明け合うだろう。

They will probably confide their feelings with each other.

19. ケーキと一緒に {食べましょう ○・ 食べ合いましょう X} 。

Let's eat cake together.

20. 乗り合わせた乗客

Fellow passengers

21. 計算を読み合わせる。

To read out and compare calculations.

22. このドレスはあたしにぴったり { (と) 合いますか・ですか} 。（Feminine）

Does this dress fit perfectly with me?

23. 申し合わせた通りにしましょう。

Let's do as arranged.

24. お互<sup>たが</sup>いに引き合わせる。

To introduce to each other.

25. 警察に問い合わせましたか。

Did you check with the police?

26. 書類<sup>しよるい</sup>を綴<sup>と</sup>じ合わせましたか。

Have you bound the documents together?

27. 布<sup>ぬ</sup>を縫い合わせる。

To sew together.

28. 傷口<sup>きずぐち</sup>を縫い合わせてもらった。

I had my wound(s) sewn up.

29. 各種<sup>づ あ</sup>詰め合わせキャンディー<sup>か い</sup>を買いに行った。

I went to buy mixed candies.

30. それらの糸<sup>よ</sup>は縊<sup>がた</sup>り合わせ難い。

These threads are hard to twist together.

31. 悲しみを分かち合う。

To share in the sadness.

 **Note:** 分かち合う is typically interchangeable with 分け合う, but it is generally more

文語的. However, in the case of "sharing" non-physical items such as sadness, you should use 分かち合う.

32. 家族の都合が合うのは今日だけだ。

Today is only when my convenience matches with my family's.

**Word Note:** 都合が合う is unavoidable in contexts like these, but it is generally not liked when referring to just one's convenience. In which case, you should say 都合がいい.

There is also another ending that shows mutual action: ～違える. This sometimes confusingly has a meaning of ～間違える. This is because the verb 違える itself has the following meanings: to not have something be the same; to mess up; to be against a contract; to injure one's muscles. You have to essentially learn on a case by case basis.

33. 靴を履き違える。

To mix up shoes.

34. 約束を違える。

To break one's promise.

**Reading Note:** This 違える may be read as either ちがえる or たがえる.

35. 寝違えて、首筋が痛い。

I got a crick in my neck, and now it hurts.

36. 社長と刺し違える。

To expose the company president and receive repercussions from him/her.

37. 一審を差し違える。

To overturn the first match decision (and give the win to the other opponent).

## ～切る

<sup>き</sup>切る means "to cut" and may be used literally and figuratively. ～切る shows that "something is done completely".

38. 彼は読書に<sup>ひた</sup>まり切っていた。

He was completely engrossed in reading.

39. 紙をはさみで切る。

To cut paper with scissors.

**漢字 Note:** 缺 is not uncommonly used to spell はさみ.

40. 彼はかの歌手の全ての歌を歌い切った。

He sang all of that singer's songs completely.

41. いつかは地球に残っている石油は全て使い切ってしまうだろう。

The remaining oil on the earth will probably one day end up completely used.

42. <sup>ひも</sup>紐を切る。

To cut a string.

43. 電話を切る。

To hang up the phone.

44. {手・関係} を切る。

To break a relationship.

45. 彼がイギリス海<sup>かいきょう</sup>峡<sup>きょうり</sup>の距離を泳ぎ切りました。

He completely swam the (entire) distance of the English Channel.

46. 水泳選手は、日本海と一緒に泳ぎきりました。

The swimmers swam across the Sea of Japan together.

47. ジョーンズ先生は来月までに約<sup>やく</sup>10冊読み切っているでしょう。

Ms. Jones will have probably read around 10 books by next month.

## 第153課: ~慣れる, ~合う・合わせる, & ~切る

This lesson continues on with intermediate compound verb endings.

**Grammar Note:** 来る can only be used with the following patterns: 来**慣れる** (to be used to coming to) and 来**合わせる** (to make one's appearance). If you think about the meanings of these phrases as they are discussed, this will make sense to you.

### ~慣れる

<sup>な</sup>慣れる, an 一段\_verb, means "to get used to" and may also mean "to domesticate", which is in essence animals getting used to human control. 慣れる is intransitive and is used as a compound ending to show an inclination to liking or being accustomed to something.

1. この街には住み慣れました。

normalot used to living in this town.



2. 彼は都市の生活に慣れることができなかった。  
He couldn't get used to living in the city.
3. 通学に慣れるのは重要<sup>じゅうよう</sup>です。  
It is important that you become used to commuting to school.
4. コンピューターは使い慣れるのは時間がかかります。  
It takes time to get used to the computer.
5. 彼は旅<sup>たび</sup>慣れている。  
He's well-traveled.
- 6a. 日本料理 {は、・を} 食べ慣れました。  
6b. 日本料理に慣れました。(もっと自然)  
I've gotten used to eating Japanese food.
7. 私は人前で話すことに慣れていません。<sup>ひとまえ</sup>  
I am not used to speaking in front of people.
8. 日本<sup>てんこう</sup>の天候に慣れる。  
To get used to Japanese weather.
9. まだ明るさに慣れてねー。(砕<sup>くだ</sup>けた言い方)  
(My eyes) are still not adjusted to the light.
10. 寵愛<sup>ちょうあい</sup>に慣れるのはだめですよ。  
It is no good to be over-familiar with attention.
- 

**Orthography Note:** なれる may be written as 狎れる when specifically referring to domestication.

## ～合う・合わせる

合う shows how something "fits". In compounds it shows "to...with each other". So, there is someone else with you doing the same action. Essentially, ～合う shows people doing something with each other--reciprocal action. The object(s) of the sentence must be similar.

The causative form 合わせる may show that one makes something into one, looks into differences, reciprocally does, or does something all of a sudden.

11. ロミオとジュリエットは愛し合っていた。  
Romeo and Juliet loved each other.

12. 誘<sup>さそ</sup>い合わせる。  
To invite each other.

13. 彼らは宿題<sup>てっだ</sup>を手伝い合った。  
They helped each other with homework.

14. 犯行現場<sup>はんこうげんば</sup>に居合わせました。  
I was present at the crime scene.

15. 何時に待ち合わせようか？  
What time shall we meet?

16. 彼と彼女は君<sup>きみ</sup>が代<sup>よ</sup>を歌い合っていた。？  
彼と彼女は君が代と一緒に歌っていた。○  
He and she sang [Kimigayo](#) with each other.

**Culture Note:** 君<sup>きみ</sup>が代<sup>よ</sup> is the national anthem (国歌<sup>こっか</sup>) of Japan.

17. 二人で聖書<sup>せいしよ</sup>を読み上げ合いました。  
The two read aloud the bible with each other.

18. 彼らは想<sup>おも</sup>いを打ち明け合うだろう。  
They will probably confide their feelings with each other.

19. ケーキと一緒に {食べましょう ○・ 食べ合いましょう X} 。  
Let's eat cake together.

20. 乗り合わせた乗客  
Fellow passengers

21. 計算を読み合わせる。  
To read out and compare calculations.

22. このドレスはあたしにぴったり { (と) 合いますか・ですか} 。 (Feminine)  
Does this dress fit perfectly with me?

23. 申し合わせた通りにしましょう。  
Let's do as arranged.

24. お互<sup>たが</sup>いに引き合わせる。

To introduce to each other.

25. 警察に問い合わせましたか。

Did you check with the police?

26. 書類<sup>しよるい</sup>を綴<sup>と</sup>じ合わせましたか。

Have you bound the documents together?

27. 布<sup>ぬ</sup>を縫い合わせる。

To sew together.

28. 傷口<sup>きずぐち</sup>を縫い合わせてもらった。

I had my wound(s) sewn up.

29. 各種<sup>づ</sup>詰め合わせキャンディー<sup>あ</sup>を買い<sup>か</sup>に行<sup>い</sup>った。

I went to buy mixed candies.

30. それらの糸<sup>よ</sup>は繕<sup>がた</sup>り合わせ難い。

These threads are hard to twist together.

31. 悲しみを分かち合う。

To share in the sadness.

**Word Note:** 分かち合う is typically interchangeable with 分け合う, but it is generally more 文語的. However, in the case of "sharing" non-physical items such as sadness, you should use 分かち合う.

32. 家族の都合<sup>ごうご</sup>が合うのは今日だけだ。

Today is only when my convenience matches with my family's.

**Word Note:** 都合が合う is unavoidable in contexts like these, but it is generally not liked when referring to just one's convenience. In which case, you should say 都合がいい.

There is also another ending that shows mutual action: ~<sup>あ</sup>違える. This sometimes confusingly has a meaning of ~<sup>あ</sup>間違える. This is because the verb 違える itself has the following meanings: to not have something be the same; to mess up; to be against a contract; to injure one's muscles. You have to essentially learn on a case by case basis.

33. 靴<sup>くつ</sup>を履<sup>は</sup>き違える。

normal mix up shoes.

34. 約束を違える。

To break one's promise.

**Reading Note:** This 違える may be read as either ちがえる or たがえる.

35. 寝違えて、首筋が痛い。

I got a crick in my neck, and now it hurts.

36. 社長と刺し違える。

To expose the company president and receive repercussions from him/her.

37. 一審を差し違える。

To overturn the first match decision (and give the win to the other opponent).

## ～切る

<sup>き</sup>  
切る means "to cut" and may be used literally and figuratively. ～切る shows that "something is done completely".

38. 彼は読書に<sup>ひた</sup>まり切っていた。

He was completely engrossed in reading.

39. 紙をはさみで切る。

To cut paper with scissors.

**漢字 Note:** 鉋 is not uncommonly used to spell はさみ.

40. 彼はかの歌手の全ての歌を歌い切った。

He sang all of that singer's songs completely.

41. いつかは地球に残っている石油は全て使い切ってしまうだろう。

The remaining oil on the earth will probably one day end up completely used.

42. 紐を<sup>ひも</sup>切る。

To cut a string.

43. 電話を切る。

To hang up the phone.

44. {手・関係} を切る。

To break a relationship.

45. 彼がイギリス海峡の距離を泳ぎ切りました。  
He completely swam the (entire) distance of the English Channel.
46. 水泳選手は、日本海と一緒に泳ぎきりました。  
The swimmers swam across the Sea of Japan together.
47. ジョーンズ先生は来月までに約10冊読み切っているでしょう。  
Ms. Jones will have probably read around 10 books by next month.

## 第154課: Adverbs III: Syntax Agreement

Syntax agreement simply describes adverbs that have specific meanings when used in a positive or negative sentence, and the adverb may specifically require being in a negative sentence.

### Positive & Negative

Some adverbs must be used in a negative sentence. Others can be in either positive or negative sentences, but translations change. This can get quite tricky.

Adverb	Positive	Negative
全然	Extremely/a lot (Colloquial)	Not at all
絶対に	Absolutely	Never
あまり	Quite/too (あまりに Only)	Not quite/very (あまり Only)
とても	Very	Simply cannot
決して		Never
もはや	Already	No more
[すこし・ちっと]も		Not a bit

**Point 1:** Examples of the colloquial usage of 全然 include 全然大丈夫 (completely fine).

**Point 2:** Examples of 絶対 (に) include the following.

1. 絶対に許さない。  
I will never allow/forgive.

2. 絶対に違う！  
Absolutely not!

**Point 3:** あまり is more common in negative contexts. あんまり is a colloquial variant due to ん insertion. In positive contexts, it implies that a limit has been passed, making it similar to 非常に (very/greatly/much/quite).

3. あまりうまくない。

I'm not really good.

4. あんまり分かんない。(Colloquial; 東京弁)

I don't quite understand.

5. あんまり<sup>うんどう</sup>運動しません。(More spoken)

I don't exercise much.

**Point 4:** With negative expressions とても means "simply cannot". とっても is a more forceful variant.

6. とても真似できない。

I simply cannot mimic.

7. とても疲れた。

I'm very tired.

8. 中国語はとっても難しい！

Chinese is very difficult!

**Point 5:** <sup>けっ</sup>決して may be casually pronounced as けして.

---

### More Examples

9. 全然分からない。

I don't understand at all.

10. このドアは<sup>し</sup>閉まらないよ。

This door won't shut.

11. わたしは一切テレビを見ません。

I don't watch television at all.

12. その日はちょっと...

That day is a little...

**Culture Note:** Japanese is indirect and so are the people that speak it. When people want to

normal

decline an invitation, they often say ...はちょっと with a very reluctant tone.

---

### まだ VS 全然 VS 全く

In a negative sentence, まだ means "yet/still hasn't." 全然 and 全く both mean "not at all," and they are both not viewed as synonyms of まだ.

13. まだ雨が降っています。

It's still raining.

14. 「もう書きましたか」 「いいえ、まだ書いていません」

"Have you written it?" "No, I haven't written it yet".

Sleeping is difficult sometimes. We might tell our friends we didn't sleep at all last night even though we actually slept a little. Or, we may have a hard time falling asleep and try talking to someone in the meantime. In that situation, though, have you actually dozed off and failed to truly fall asleep, or have you been completely sleepless? With all of this in mind, we'll now learn how to express these situations in Japanese.

15a. まだ寝<sup>ね</sup>ていません。

15b. まだぜんぜん寝ていません。

15a. I still haven't slept (at all).

15b. I still haven't slept any. (Have slept but not enough)

16. まだ寝ない。 VS ぜんぜん寝ない。

I still won't sleep. I won't sleep at all.

17. もう朝なの？ まだ全然寝てない。

It's already morning? But I still haven't slept much at all.

18. きのは全く寝なかった。 (You didn't sleep for even a minute)

19. きのは全然寝なかった。 (You slept a little)

きのは全然寝(ら)れなかった means "I couldn't sleep at all", but it sounds like you might have slept some. You might find yourself in a conversation like the following.

20. 「はあー、きのは全然寝(ら)れなかったよ」 「本当に一睡<sup>いっすい</sup>もしてないの？」 「いやー、寝たには寝たけど30分おきに起きちゃってさ」

"Haa, I didn't sleep at all last night" "Really? You didn't sleep a bit?" "Well, I did sleep if that's what you mean, but I would wake up every thirty minutes"

## Misconceptions on 全然

全然 was borrowed from Chinese about three centuries ago. At the time, it roughly equated to "completely" with both positive and negative sentences. Getting closer to modern times, its meaning narrowed to only be used in negative sentences. Now, the word has changed again in casual language to mean とても. For example, you'll hear things like ぜんぜんおいしい and ぜんぜん大丈夫. The former, though, may sometimes have the nuance of "not thinking it would be delicious but turns out it is quite alright."

## 第154課: Adverbs III: Syntax Agreement

Syntax agreement simply describes adverbs that have specific meanings when used in a positive or negative sentence, and the adverb may specifically require being in a negative sentence.

### Positive & Negative

Some adverbs must be used in a negative sentence. Others can be in either positive or negative sentences, but translations change. This can get quite tricky.

Adverb	Positive	Negative
全然	Extremely/a lot (Colloquial)	Not at all
絶対に	Absolutely	Never
あまり	Quite/too (あまりに Only)	Not quite/very (あまり Only)
とても	Very	Simply cannot
決して		Never
もはや	Already	No more
[すこし・ちっと]も		Not a bit

**Point 1:** Examples of the colloquial usage of 全然 include 全然大丈夫 (completely fine).  
だいじょうぶ

**Point 2:** Examples of 絶対 (に) include the following.  
ぜったい

1. 絶対に許さない。  
ゆる  
I will never allow/forgive.

2. 絶対に違う！  
ちが  
Absolutely not!

normal



**Point 3:** あまり is more common in negative contexts. あんまり is a colloquial variant due to ん insertion. In positive contexts, it implies that a limit has been passed, making it similar to 非常に (very/greatly/much/quite).

3. あまりうまくない。

I'm not really good.

4. あんまり分かんない。(Colloquial; 東京弁)

I don't quite understand.

5. あんまり<sup>うんどう</sup>運動しません。(More spoken)

I don't exercise much.

**Point 4:** With negative expressions とても means "simply cannot". とっても is a more forceful variant.

6. とても真似できない。

I simply cannot mimic.

7. とても疲れた。

I'm very tired.

8. 中国語はとっても難しい！

Chinese is very difficult!

**Point 5:** <sup>けっ</sup>決して may be casually pronounced as けして.

---

### More Examples

9. 全然分らない。

I don't understand at all.

10. このドアは<sup>し</sup>閉まらないよ。

This door won't shut.

11. わたしは一切テレビを見ません。

I don't watch television at all.

12. その日はちょっと...

That day is a little...

**Culture Note:** Japanese is indirect and so are the people that speak it. When people want to

normal

decline an invitation, they often say ...はちょっと with a very reluctant tone.

---

### まだ VS 全然 VS 全く

In a negative sentence, まだ means "yet/still hasn't." 全然 and 全く both mean "not at all," and they are both not viewed as synonyms of まだ.

13. まだ雨が降っています。

It's still raining.

14. 「もう書きましたか」 「いいえ、まだ書いていません」

"Have you written it?" "No, I haven't written it yet".

Sleeping is difficult sometimes. We might tell our friends we didn't sleep at all last night even though we actually slept a little. Or, we may have a hard time falling asleep and try talking to someone in the meantime. In that situation, though, have you actually dozed off and failed to truly fall asleep, or have you been completely sleepless? With all of this in mind, we'll now learn how to express these situations in Japanese.

15a. まだ寝<sup>ね</sup>ていません。

15b. まだぜんぜん寝ていません。

15a. I still haven't slept (at all).

15b. I still haven't slept any. (Have slept but not enough)

16. まだ寝ない。 VS ぜんぜん寝ない。

I still won't sleep. I won't sleep at all.

17. もう朝なの？ まだ全然寝てない。

It's already morning? But I still haven't slept much at all.

18. きのは全く寝なかった。 (You didn't sleep for even a minute)

19. きのは全然寝なかった。 (You slept a little)

きのは全然寝(ら)れなかった means "I couldn't sleep at all", but it sounds like you might have slept some. You might find yourself in a conversation like the following.

20. 「はあー、きのは全然寝(ら)れなかったよ」 「本当に一睡<sup>いっすい</sup>もしてないの？」 「いやー、寝たには寝たけど30分おきに起きちゃってさ」

"Haa, I didn't sleep at all last night" "Really? You didn't sleep a bit?" "Well, I did sleep if that's what you mean, but I would wake up every thirty minutes"

## Misconceptions on 全然

全然 was borrowed from Chinese about three centuries ago. At the time, it roughly equated to "completely" with both positive and negative sentences. Getting closer to modern times, its meaning narrowed to only be used in negative sentences. Now, the word has changed again in casual language to mean とても. For example, you'll hear things like ぜんぜんおいしい and ぜんぜん大丈夫. The former, though, may sometimes have the nuance of "not thinking it would be delicious but turns out it is quite alright."

## 第156課: Plants & Animals

We humans share the planet with many kinds of living things. We all probably know the names of hundreds in our native languages, but what about Japanese? This lesson does not introduce all things that lives, but you will finish knowing the names of several handfuls.

### Biology in Context

Although all plant and animal names have 漢字 associated with them for the most part, if the spelling is not as common than the カタカナ spelling, it will be left in parentheses for reference.

1. 東京の葛西臨海水族園に <sup>かつさいりんかいすいぞくえん</sup> 訪れた人たちは <sup>いきお</sup> 勢いよく <sup>む</sup> 群れで泳ぐ **マグロ**(<sup>すがた</sup> 鮪)の姿を楽しんでいました。

The people who visited the Kassai Marine Aquarium in Tokyo were enjoying seeing the schools of **tuna** swimming energetically.

2. <sup>やせい</sup> 野生の <sup>くま</sup> 熊が山から下りてきた。

The wild **bear** came down from the mountain.

3. **バラ**(<sup>らくえん</sup> 薔薇)の咲く楽園へようこそ。

Welcome to paradise where **roses** blossom.

4. **オオカミ**(<sup>ほろ</sup> 狼)がいないと、**ウサギ**(<sup>うさぎ</sup> 兎)が減びてしまう。

If there were no **wolves**, **rabbits** would die out.

5. <sup>まんなか</sup> 道の真ん中で <sup>へび</sup> 蛇を <sup>ふ</sup> 踏んだらどうなりますか？

What happens when you step/stomp on a **snake** in the middle of the road?

6. **カエル**(<sup>かえる</sup> 蛙)を <sup>ひ</sup> 轢いたことがあります。

I have run over a **frog** before.

7. その畑には多くの<sup>じゅもく</sup>樹木<sup>なら</sup>が並んでいました。  
Many **trees** were lined up by each other in the field.

8. 近い将来、海の<sup>しょうらい</sup>魚<sup>ぜつめつじょうたい</sup>が絶滅状態になるかもしれない。  
In the near future, the **fishes** of the sea may become extinct.

**Reading Note:** 魚 may be read as さかな or うお. The first is typically more common, but the latter is required in certain expressions. The latter is actually from the original word for fish.

9. 馬に乗ったことがありますか？  
Have you ever ridden a **horse**?

10. 庭に竹を植えたいです。  
I want to plant **bamboo** in my yard.

11. クモ（蜘蛛）の巣は飛んでいる<sup>つか</sup>虫<sup>わな</sup>を捕まえる罠です。  
A **spider** web is a trap to catch flying **insects**.

12. 引き上げる度に、10～20匹ずつ<sup>あみ</sup>網に力ニが付いてくる。  
Each time I lift the net up, 10-20 **crabs** are in it.

13. 家の庭に<sup>にわ</sup>果樹<sup>かじゅ</sup>や<sup>さくら</sup>桜<sup>う え</sup>を植えてはいけない。  
You can't plant **fruit trees** or **cherry blossom trees** in your yard.

14. 数頭の<sup>すうとう</sup>牛<sup>さく</sup>がその柵<sup>に</sup>を壊して逃げてしまった。  
Several **cows** broke that fence over there and escaped.

15. カメ（亀）に<sup>か</sup>噛まれた時はどうすればよいでしょうか。  
What should you do when you're bitten by a **turtle**?

16. <sup>ひつじ</sup>羊<sup>かぞ</sup>を数えても眠れ<sup>ねむ</sup>ない。  
I can't sleep even if I count **sheep**.

17. 日本には昔から<sup>す</sup>ウサギ<sup>せつわ</sup>（兔）が月<sup>つた</sup>に棲むという説話が伝わっている。  
There is a legend in Japan that has been told since ancient times that **rabbits** live on the moon.

18. <sup>さる</sup>猿<sup>ぎ いん</sup>は木<sup>せんきょ</sup>から落ちてても猿だが、議員が選挙で落ちれば、ただの人なのだ。  
A **monkey** is still a **monkey** when he falls out of a **tree**, but an assemblyman is simply a

normal

regular man when he falls out of the election.

19. あたしはトラ（虎）になる夢を見る猫ですにゃあ。  
I'm a **cat** who dreams of becoming a **tiger**.

20. キツネ（狐）を飼いたい。  
I want to raise a **fox**.

21. 現在、上野動物園には象は何頭いるか知っていますか。  
How many **elephants** are there currently at Ueno Zoo?

22. たまに蚊を手で殺した時に血が付着するけど、あれって僕らの血なの？それとも蚊の血なの？誰か教えてください！  
Occasionally blood gets on me when I kill a **mosquito** with my hand, but is that our blood? Or, is it the **mosquito's** blood? Someone, please tell me.

23. フグ（河豚）を食べる国は日本以外にはどれくらいありますか？  
How many other countries are there aside from Japan where people eat **puffer fish**?

24. 小さいトカゲ（蜥蜴）が部屋の壁にくっついていていた。  
There's a small **lizard** stuck on the wall inside the room.

25. 妊娠中はイカ（烏賊）やタコ（蛸）を食べてはいけない。  
You mustn't eat **squid** or **octopus** while pregnant.

26. キリン（麒麟）に乗れる場所を探しています。  
I'm looking for a place where I can ride a **giraffe**.

27. ライオンはシマウマ（縞馬）を食べますよね。  
**Lions** eat **zebras**, right?

28. パンダは中国にしかいない。  
**Pandas** are only in China.

29. シカ（鹿）が多すぎる。  
There are too many **deer**.

30. アリ（蟻）を殺すと雨が降る。  
When you kill an **ant**, it rains.

31. ペンギンはなぜ南半球にしかいないの？  
Why are **penguins** only in the Southern Hemisphere?

normal

32. 祖母に<sup>そ ぼ</sup>鴨肉<sup>かもにく</sup>を使ったレシピを教えてくださいました。  
I had my grandmother teach me a recipe that uses **duck** meat.

Note: A domesticated duck is called an アヒル.

33. 蝶<sup>ちょう</sup>の寿命<sup>じゅみょう</sup>は長くても数ヶ月<sup>すうかげつていど</sup>程度です。  
The lifespan of a butterfly, at the most, is around several months.

**Variation Note:** Butterfly may also be チョウチョウ (蝶々) or 蝶ちょ.

34. うなぎ<sup>づ</sup> (鰻) 釣りの餌<sup>えさ</sup>は何がいい？  
What sort of bait is best for fishing **eels**?

35. 本物のクジラを見てみたい。  
I want to see an actual **whale**.

36. タヌキ<sup>とくゆう</sup> (狸) は日本特有の動物です。  
The **tanuki** (raccoon dogs) is a unique animal to Japan.

37. 日本ではかつてネズミ<sup>わな し か</sup>罠を仕掛けるとき、油揚げ<sup>あぶら あ</sup>を餌<sup>もち</sup>として用いるのが一般的<sup>いっぱんてき</sup>だった。  
In the past in Japan, it was commonplace to use deep-fried tofu as bait to trap **mice**.

38. サメ<sup>めった</sup> (鯨) は滅多に人間<sup>にんげん</sup>を襲<sup>おそ</sup>わない。  
**Sharks** seldom eat **people**.

**Usage Note:** Some people say フカ (鰻) for shark. This is predominantly a West Japanese word for it, and it traditionally refers to a large shark. Most sharks are large, so it might as well be the general word for shark.

39. ハチ (蜂) やスズメバチ (雀蜂) に気をつけましょう！  
Be careful of **bees** and **wasps**?

**Usage Note:** 蜂 is a general term for any kind of bee or wasp. ミツバチ refers to what Americans think of as being bees. アシナガバチ and スズメバチ both would be called wasps, hornets, or yellow jackets by English speakers, but the former has long legs as the name suggests. The Japanese equivalent of a bumblebee is a クマバチ. Some speakers call this as クマンバチ. Both words may also refer to a オオスズメバチ. The American version is マルハナバチ. The オオスズメバチ (giant hornet) is extremely dangerous. キイロスズメバチ may be called カメバチ (瓶蜂), トックリバチ (徳利蜂), or アカバチ (赤蜂). クロ<sup>normal</sup>メバチ and シダクロスズメバチ, which would specifically be called wasps by most

English speakers, are wasps known for building their nests in the ground. Thus, some Japanese speakers call them ジバチ (地蜂), ドバチ (土蜂), ハイバチ (灰蜂), ヘボ (used in the 東海地方), or スガレ・スガリ (used throughout 東北). Special attention is given to ハチ because all aside from bumblebees are especially dangerous in Japan.

## 第157課: 擬声語: 擬音語: Animal Sounds

Everyone likes animals. Haven't you seen some today at work or school? Jokes aside, languages are not in agreement about what animals sound like. Sometimes they may sound similar across unrelated languages, but usually they don't.

**Curriculum Note:** This lesson is currently a stub lesson and will be expanded over time.

### Animal Sounds

The following table lists the most important animal sounds in Japanese. See how different they are?

Dog	ワンワン・キャン キャン	Cat	ニャー ニャー	Cow	モーモー
Mouse	チューチュー	Pig	ブーブー	Bee	ブンブン
Chicken	コケコッコー	Horse	ヒヒーン	Frog	ケロケロ・ゲロ ゲロ
Duck	ガーガー	Owl	ホーホー	Monster/lion	ガオー
Sheep/goat	メーメー	Crow	カーカー	Bird	チッチッ
Fox	コンコン	Dove	ポッポ	Cricket	コロコロ
Pheasant	ケンケン	Sparrow	チュンチュ ン	Chick	ピヨピヨ

### More Birds

The most abundant source of animal sounds in Japanese are from birds. This is because each bird species have particular songs. As there are many indigenous bird species in Japan, pictures will be used to show you what these birds look like.



ウグイス：ホーホケキョ



カッコウ：カッコー



ホトトギス：テッペンカケタカ



トンビ：ピーヒョロロ

## 第158課: 擬声語 III: 擬態語・擬情語

擬態語 represent states and 擬情語 represent emotion(al states). These are intertwined with each other, and they are often tied to some sort of sound. Just like before, different spellings and nuances based on context are to be expected. However, the best thing that you can do to learn Japanese onomatopoeic expressions is see them how they're being used.

### 擬態語・擬情語

To begin, we will look at a chart of common 擬態語 and 擬情語. Some notes that we have already seen before will be repeated in context of this lesson as reinforcement of what you already know with new material.

normal



Tired, exhausted	くたくた (と・に)	Irritated	いらいら (と)
Refreshed	すっきり (と)	Fixedly	じっと
Round and round	ぐるぐる (と)	Firmly; fixedly	ぐっと
Relieved	ほっと	Nervous; excitedly	わくわく (と)
Resolutely; tightly; firmly; steadily	しっかり (と)	Furiously	ぶんぶん (と)
Restlessly	そわそわ (と)	Astonished	びっくり (と)
In a mess	めちゃくちゃ	Drenched	びっしょり (と)
Glistening	ぴかぴか (と)	Radiantly	きらきら (と)
Watery	べちゃべちゃ	Sneeze	はくしょん
Rough	ざらざら (と・に)	Stickily	ねばねば (と)
Ecstatically; vacantly	うっとり (と)	Dejected	がっかり

- **くたくた**: Exhausted, worn down, boiled to a mush, or even wordy.
- **いらいら (と)** : It may be irritating as in emotions are as in the body.
- **すっきり (と)** : Being refreshed, clean-cut, straightforward, complete, and even neat.
- **しっかり (と)** : It can also mean reliable and enough.
- **ぶんぶん (と)** : It can also refer to a strong smell in a negative fashion.

**Part of Speech Note:** Some verbs are based off of onomatopoeia. Ex. きらめく (to sparkle/radiate).

**Voicing Note:** Voiced onomatopoeia often have a more serious or dramatic tone to them versus their very similar non-voiced counterparts. They are often antonymous. For example, さらさら can be smooth but ざらざら is rough.

As you can see, there are some very similar patterns going on. Many onomatopoeic expressions in Japanese are the result of a doubled element(s). We have expressions like normalこそ (と) (stealthily) where double-morae element is doubled. These in particular are

subject to having many variants. For instance, you can say こそっと or こっそり instead.

Note that the insertion of the っ is prevented when the resulting double consonant is not one that is allowed in Japanese.

Please note that you always have your irregularities. Sometimes different forms have different nuances, although always related. This does not include non-onomatopoeic words with repeating elements. This is really just something you have to mess around with and test the limits of.

## Examples

1. めらめらともえている 炎<sup>ほのお</sup>  
A flaring flame

2. ちんちん。  
Beg! (To a dog)

3. だらだらとした討論<sup>とうろん</sup>  
A lengthy debate

4. じとじとした部屋  
Humid/damp room

5. がっかりした顔  
A dejected face


6. 音楽にうっとりする。<sup>おんがく</sup>  
To be enchanted by music.

7. はらはらして待つ。  
To wait in great suspense.

8. ばらばらに壊す。<sup>こわ</sup>  
To break into pieces.

9. でれでれにする。  
To be love-stricken.

10. によろによろと這い回る。<sup>は まわ</sup>  
To slither about.

11. <sup>あに</sup>  は今日ブンブンしてる。(Casual)

My old brother is in a bad mood today.

12. ぎらぎら<sup>たいよう</sup>光る太陽  
A glaring sun

13a. 雨の中をはるばる来る。

13b. 雨の中をわざわざ来る。

Come all the way through the rain.

**Sentence Note:** 13a infers that you never stopped on the way, and 13b infers that you took the trouble to come that far.

14. からからにする。

To dry up.

15. ずきずき<sup>いた</sup>と痛む。  
To throb in pain.

16. ぎっしり<sup>っ</sup>詰まった  
Packed; tight; heavy

17. 雨でぐっしりとぬれた。  
I got soaked by the rain.

18. ペこり<sup>あたま</sup>と頭<sup>さ</sup>を下げる。  
To bob one's head.

19. ぼんやりとした人影<sup>ひとかげ</sup>  
A vague figure.

20. がっしりとした男  
A well-built man

21. (あなた)の日本語の能力<sup>のうりよく</sup>はめきめきと上達<sup>じょうたつ</sup>していますね。  
Your Japanese skills are remarkably improving.

22. チューインガムが靴<sup>くつ</sup>の底<sup>そこ</sup>にぺたっとくっついた。  
Chewing gum stuck to the bottom of my shoe.

23. ぐずぐずする。  
To be slow at doing.

24. まるまるとした酔っ払い  
A plump drunkard

25. 煙がもくもくと上がる。  
For smoke to rise.

26. ぱっくりと裂ける。  
To split open.

27. とげがちくちく（と）する  
Thorns are prickly

28. 背中がぞくぞく（と）する。  
For one's back to chill.

29. ふつふつ（と）沸く  
To boil out.

30. 彼はまあまあ優しい。  
He is relatively nice.

**Part of Speech Note:** まあまあ can also be seen as an interjection meaning "now, now" or "my, my". Many adverbial phrases have varying parts of speech depending on usage.

31. 瓶はすっかり空だ。  
The bottle is quite/completely empty.

32. もうすっかりよくなりましたか。  
Have you become quite well already?

33. そっと肩を抱いた。  
I gently hugged his shoulder.

**Reading Note:** 抱く is either read as だく or いたく. The first shows physical embrace. The latter shows the bearing of thoughts, feelings, etc.

---

### Eating & Drinking

To gnaw	がりがり（と）かじる	To eat heartily	もりもり（と）食べる
To gulp whole	がぶりと飲み込む	To bite into	ぱ（っ）くり（と）食べる

To bite fiercely	がぶり (と) かむ		
------------------	------------	--	--

### Laughter

To smile	にっこり (と) 笑う	To smile	にこにこ (と) 笑う
To sneer	せせら笑う	To have a broad grin	にた {つと・りと・にた (と)} 笑う
To smirk	にや {つと・りと・にや (と)} 笑う		

## 第159課: ～中: During/Throughout

You will often see ～中 used in time phrases, and it is typically translated as during or throughout.

### ～中

Although both are written as 中, the suffixes ～ちゅう and ～じゅう are slightly different.

～ちゅう means "during" in the sense of "under way". It becomes ～じゅう with 今日, 昨日, etc. It may also be used to show duration of condition (Ex. お祈り中 = At/in prayer). It can also mean under(going)——Ex. 試験中 = undergoing an exam.

～じゅう can be used to show duration as well. ～間中 (ずっと) is a frequently used phrase and means "during/while". It helps when you want to use ～じゅう when you can use 間. This shows start to finish. Phrases it can directly attach to include things such as 一晩<sup>ひとばん</sup>, 一年<sup>いちねん</sup>, etc. ～じゅう(に) may also mean "throughout" but in terms of distance and place. For instance, say you get stung all over your body by bees. You can use 体じゅう to describe where you were stung.

Connecting Note: ～中 can attach to either Sino-Japanese or native words. However, the etymology of the word it is used with will not help you in using the right reading. You have to learn how it is read one phrase at a time.

### Examples

normal

1. 弟は はるやす ちゅう 春休み中遊んでばかり {でした・いた}。  
My brother just played all throughout spring break.

Grammar Note: ～てばかりです shows incessant action.

2. 今日中 きょうじゅう し あ に仕上げてください。  
Please finish it up within (the end of) today.

3. 休業 きゅうぎょうちゅう えいぎょうしょ 中の営業所  
A business office that's closed for the holidays

4. 体 からだ 中 じゅう が痛んだ。  
It hurt all over my body.

5. 密漁船 みつりょうせん が操業 そうぎょうちゅう 中に転覆 てんぷく した。  
A poaching ship capsized in operation.

6. 百 ひゃく 人 にん 中 ちゅう 半数避難 はんすうひなん しました。  
Out of the 100 people, half evacuated.

**Meaning Note:** You will often see ～中 used in the same sense as in Ex. 6. to mean "out of...". Note that it is attached to the *counter* phrase 百人.

**Phrase Note:** One common phrase which is slightly grammatically questionable is 発売中. This is often used to emphasize having started to sell something. However, the definition of 発売 is "to begin selling". As you can see, it is an instantaneous verb, and instantaneous verbs normally should never take 中. For instance, you can't say 死亡中, 卒業中, or 結婚中. You can say, though, 婚約中 (engaged) and 出願中 (under application). These phrases are acceptable because there is an end to the state the verb brings about. So, while 発売中 is typically acceptable when the product has not been out long, after a long period of time, it becomes very strange Japanese to anyone.

The following phrases all have ～中 with the reading ちゅう except 世界中, which is read as せかいじゅう. Remember, when ～中 means "during", it is read as ちゅう, and when it means "throughout", it is read as ～じゅう.

今年 中	During the year	午前 中	During the morning	今月 中	During the month
---------	-----------------	---------	--------------------	---------	------------------

来月 中	Within the next month	在学 中	In schooling	世界 中	Throughout the world
販売 中	On sale (not as in discount)	存命 中	While one is still alive	空気 中	In the air

## 第160課: The Body

This lesson will be about the parts of the body.

### The Body

Many phrases relate to the body. Below is a chart of the most important parts of the body.

Blood	血	ち	Blood vessel	血管	けっかん
Hand	手	て	Arm	腕	うで
Finger	指	ゆび	Wrist	手首	てくび
Ankle	足首	あしくび	Heel	踵	かかと
Shoulder	肩	かた	Nail	爪	つめ
Shin	脛	すね	Knee	膝	ひざ
Calf	脛脛	ふくらはぎ	Thigh	腿	もも
Thumb	親指・ 拇	おやゆび	Index finger	人差し指	ひとさし ゆび
Middle finger	中指	なかゆび	Ring finger	薬指	くすりゆ び
Pinky	小指	こゆび	Palm	手の平	てのひら
Intestines	腸	ちょう	Bellybutton	臍	へそ
Head	頭	あたま	Hair	髪 (の毛)	かみ (の け)
Forehead	額	ひたい	Throat	喉	のど

normal

Brain	脳	のう	Tongue	舌	した
Eyes	目、瞳	め、ひとみ	Eyeball	眼球	がんきゅう
Eyelash	睫毛	まつげ	Eyebrow	眉（毛）	まゆ（げ）
Ear	耳	みみ	Eardrum	鼓膜	こまく
Skull	頭蓋骨	ずがいこつ	Nose	鼻	はな
Nose hair	鼻毛	はなげ	Cheek	頬	ほお・ほほ
Mouth	口	くち	Teeth	歯	は
Gums	歯茎	はぐき	Lips	唇	くちびる
Jaw	顎・頤	あご	Chin	下顎	したあご
Face	顔	かお	Neck	首、頸部	くび
Spine	脊柱、背骨	せきちゅう、せぼね	Back	背（中）	せ（なか）
Chest	胸	むね	Esophagus	食道	しょくどう
Stomach	胃	い	Internal organ	内臓	ないぞう
Bowel	腸	はらわた	Liver	肝臓	かんぞう
Pancreas	膵臓	すいぞう	Appendix	盲腸	もうちょう
Small intestine	小腸	しょうちょう	Large intestine	大腸	だいちょう
Abdomen	腹	はら	Heart	心臓	しんぞう
Gall bladder	胆のう	たんのう	Lungs	肺（臓）	はい（ぞう）
Kidney	腎臓	じんぞう	Bone	骨	ほね
Pelvis	骨盤	こつばん	Leg; foot	足 (foot)、脚 (leg)	あし



## Word Notes:

1. To say "left" or "right X", all you need to do is add 左 and 右 respectively. So, right leg would be 右足.
  2. 手 sometimes refers to full arm.
- 

## Examples

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. のどが <sup>いた</sup> 痛い。<br>To have a sore throat.  | 2. のどが <sup>かわ</sup> 渴いた。<br>I'm thirsty.   |
| 3. ドアに {指・親指} <sup>はさ</sup> を挟む。<br>To smash one's [finger/thumb] in a door.  | 4. 手を <sup>あ</sup> 挙げる。<br>To surrender.<br>Literally: To raise one's hands/arms. |
| 5. 能ある <sup>のう</sup> タカは <sup>つめ</sup> 爪を <sup>かく</sup> 隠す。(Idiomatic)<br>Still waters run deep.<br>Literally: A hawk with talent hides its talons. | 6. 手が <sup>た</sup> 足りない。<br>To be shorthanded.                                    |
| 7. 顔が <sup>き</sup> 利く。<br>To have many contacts.<br>Literally: The face effective.  | 8. 膝の <sup>ひざ</sup> 皿 <sup>さら</sup><br>Kneecap                                    |
| 9. のどが <sup>つ</sup> 詰まる。<br>To choke.   | 10. 地に膝を <sup>つ</sup> 突く。<br>To go to the ground on one's knees.                  |
| 11. 耳が遠い。<br>To be hard of hearing.   | 12. 顔を <sup>つぶ</sup> 潰す。<br>To embarrass.<br>Literally: To crush one's face.      |
| 13. 耳に <sup>のこ</sup> 残る。<br>To tingle in the ears.  | 14. 鼻がいい。<br>Have a good sense of smell.  |
| 15. 耳を <sup>ふさ</sup> 塞ぐ。<br>To close one's ears.  | 16. 鼻が高い。<br>To be proud.   |
| 17. 鼻をほじる。<br>To pick one's nose.   | 18. 鼻であしらう。<br>To snub.   |

19. よく舌が回る。  
To be quite eloquent.

21. 胸に閉まる。  
To keep to oneself.

23a. 錠を服用する。X

23b. 錠剤を服用する。  
To take a pill.

**Vocabulary Note:** ～錠 is the counter for pills.

25. 予約をしてもらえますか。  
Could you make an appointment for me?

**Grammar Note:** Using the negative form is OK here as well or a more honorific final form like いただけませんか。

20. のどを通らない。  
To have no appetite.

22. 胃腸が {強い・弱い} 。  
To have a [strong/weak] system.

24. こういう無意識の時間は脳辺縁系の  
海馬が 司 っている。  
む い し き      だいのうへんえんけい  
かいば      つかさど

Such unconscious time is controlled by the hippocampus of the limbic system.

By 池田清彦<sup>きよひこ</sup>, a biologist, in the commentary  
for 冷たい誘惑<sup>ゆうわく</sup> *Cold Temptations* by 乃南アサ<sup>のなみ</sup>サ.

**Anatomy Note:** If you don't know what the limbic system or the hippocampus is, the 漢字 tell you they're about the brain.

### 凝る Versus 懲りる

These words are often confused because they sound similar, and sometimes when not written in 漢字, they resemble each other. The first is a 五段 verb and the second is a 一段 verb. The following chart describes their most important usages.

凝る (こる)	使用例	懲りる (こりる)	使用例
To be stiff	肩が凝っている。	To learn a lesson	彼女の運転には懲りた。
To be addicted to	釣りに凝る。		
To be intricate with	凝りすぎた文体		

### 会話 1

26. お母さん: あら、セッス、顔色がよくないわね。

セス: ええ、実は、今朝から何となく寒気がして、それに頭が痛くて。。。。

お母さん: 熱はあるの？

セス: さあ、分かりません。でも、あるかもしれません。

normal

お母さん: そうねえ。顔がちょっと赤いわねえ。風邪かしら。お医者さんに診察をもらったほうがいいよ。電話をかけてみるから。

(電話を切る)

セス: どうもありがとうございました。

お母さん: いいえ、でもよかったね、ちょうど空いてて。

There are several new things in this short little conversation. The mother uses a lot of feminine expressions, which haven't really been covered up to this point. あら is an expression like "oh my!" and is often used by female speakers. Sentence endings like わね, の (making a question), and かしら (I wonder) are all feminine.

---

### Grammar Points

～かもしれません = Might～たほうがいい = It's best to ～てみる = To try to...

---

### New Vocab

顔色	かおいろ	Complexion
何となく	なんとなく	Somehow or other
お医者さん	おいしゃさん	Doctor
診察	しんさつ	Examination (medical)

---

## 会話 2

27. セス、医者に行く。

医者: どうしましたか。

セス: あのう、今朝から体がだるくなって、さっきのども痛くなって。

医者: そうですか。

セス: それに、ものを飲み込むとき、痛いんです。

医者: いけませんね。食欲は？

セス: あまりありません。

医者: じゃ、ちょっとのどを見てください。大きく口を開けてください。ああ、やはりずいぶん赤いですね。風邪ですよ。薬を出しますから、一週間飲んでみてください。それから一日に何回か、うがいをしてください。早く治ると思いますよ。

normal

セス: はい、分かりました。食事はどうしたらいいでしょうか。

医者: そうですね。あのう、まあ、軟らかいものだけにしておいたらどうですか。おかゆぐらいにするんですが。

セス: ありがとうございます。

医者: お大事に。

---

### Grammar Points

1. ～ておく: Used to show action in advance or preparation of something.
2. ～たらいいでしょうか = What do I do about?
3. ～たらどうですか = How about doing...?
4. ～ぐらい is used here to show a minimal limit.
5. ～てみましょう = Let's try to... Here it is used to more indirect and polite to the patient.

**Culture Note:** お大事に is only said to those that are in need of care.

怠い	だるい	To feel sluggish
飲み込む	のみこむ	To swallow
食欲	しょくよく	Appetite
何回か	なんかい	Several times
治る	なおる	To heal
嗽をする	うがいをする	To gargle
軟らかい	やわらかい	Soft
お大事に	おだいじに	Take care

## 第164課: Or

This lesson is about the several ways to say "or," but it is not exhaustive. Nevertheless, it will provide you what you need to know to understand how to express "or" correctly in Japanese.

### Or

normal
--------

## か・それか・それとも

か can also list noun phrases to mean "or." When you start a new sentence to list things with "or," you use それか. If you start a new sentence in listing with "or" but are making a question, you use それとも. か functions for both situations when you don't make a new sentence.

1. すしかさしみを食べるつもりです。  
I intend to eat sushi or sashimi.

**Grammar Note:** か is not necessary after sashimi. Adding it would be old-fashioned.

2. すしを食べる。それか、フランス料理を食べる。  
Eat sushi, or eat French cuisine.
3. すしを食べる？ それとも、フランス料理を食べるの？  
Will you have sushi? Or, will you have French cuisine?
4. 手で書くか。それとも、タイプするか。  
Will you write it by hand? Or, will you type it?
5. 料理をする。それか、掃除をする。  
I'll cook. Or, I'll do the cleaning.

**Practice:** Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. A nation like Japan or China.
2. I'll eat fish. Or, I'll eat pizza.
3. Will you go next month? Or, will you go next week?
4. He is around 20 years old.
5. Is he smart?

---

## か（どうか）

"Whether (or not)" is "か（どう）か". どう may only be added when the embedded question doesn't have a question word like 何 in it. When just か is used, the "not" is implied.

6. 彼が かれ 弟 おとうと さんかどうかは怪しい。  
It is doubtful that he is his little brother.

7. 彼女がパーティーに来るかどうか（を）知っていますか。  
Do you know if she is coming to the party or not?

normal

8. 明日までに宿題ができるかどうかかわかんない。

I don't know whether or not I'll be able to finish my homework by tomorrow.

9. 「明日はいい天気でしょうか」「あの、いい天気かどうか**分かりません**」

“Is tomorrow's weather going to be good?” “Uh, I don't know if it's going to be good weather or not”.

10. 先生が学校に行った**か**は不明だ。

It is unknown **whether** the teacher went to the school.

11. だれ（だ）か分からない。

I don't know who he is.

**Grammar Note:** The **だ** isn't necessary when followed by **か** inside a subordinate clause.

**Variant Note:** **かいなか** is a very formal variant of **かどうか**.

---

### **AかAないか: No More Than**

This usage is **exclusively used with counter phrases**. As the examples below suggest, A is the same verbal expression in the affirmative and negative form respectively.

12. 2千円するかしらないかだ。

It costs no more than 2,000 yen.

13. 歩数は千歩行くか行かないかだ。

The number of steps is no more than 1000.

14. 彼の年のころは50歳になるかならないかだ。

He's no more than fifty years old.

## **Literary "Or" Phrases**

### **または**

または, rarely written as 又は, is used in situations such as when you want to express tolerance/allowance of either options presented or when out of two things you take one and get rid of the other.

15. 電話または電報で知らせる。

To inform by either phone or telegram.

16. 肉または魚の料理を準備する。  
To either prepare meat or fish.

17. A**または**Bに○を付ける。  
To put a ○ to A or B.

**Reminder Note:** As for **または**, it gives the sense that either is fine.

---

### もしくは

もしくは, rarely written in 漢字 as 若しくは, is used in limited situations where you choose something out of several options.

18. 万年筆**もしくは**ボールペンで書くこと  
Writing with a fountain pen or a ballpoint pen.

19. 手紙**もしくは**電話で連絡する。  
To contact via letter or phone.

**Remember Note:** もしくは should only be used if the options are not significantly different.

---

### あるいは

あるいは, rarely in 漢字 as 或 (い) は, is used in situations where you are showing that things are alternate or both simultaneous, but it is not normally used in showing permission/allowance.

20. インタビューの結果を口頭発表、**あるいは**論文の形で報告する。  
To either report the interview results by oral representation or essay form.

21. 東京**あるいは**ソウルのような首都  
A capital city like Tokyo or Seoul.

Note: As for **あるいは**, the items must be of the same kind.

---

### ないし

ないし, rarely spelled in 漢字 as 乃至, doesn't merely suggest A or B but A and B and what's in between. This is quite different from the other options. So, pay attention to this.

North or northeast

**Etymology Note:** As the characters show, this is not a combination of the negative ない and the particle し.

**Reminder Note:** All of these are rather formal and literary and would be replaced by か in the spoken language.

## 第162課: Food

Japanese food, にほんりょうり 日本料理・わしょく 和食・日本食, is one of the most interesting things about Japan. At the end of this lesson, you will be able to go to a Japanese restaurant (日本料理屋) and talk about what's in your food, how to ask for your food, etc.

### At a Restaurant

#### お品書き (Menu)

お好み焼き Okonomiyaki 700 ¥    天丼 Tendon 780 ¥    寿司 Sushi 1400 ¥    すき  
焼き Sukiyaki 1200 ¥  
刺し身 Sashimi 1350 ¥    狐そば Kitsune soba 700 ¥    狐うどん Kitsune udon  
700 ¥    サラダ Salad 400 ¥  
お握りずし Onigirizushi 1000 ¥    ざるそば Zaru soba 550 ¥    しゃぶしゃぶ  
Shabushabu 1250 ¥

#### お飲み物

ビール Beer 310 ¥    お茶 Tea 300 ¥    水 Water 100 ¥    コーク Coke  
250 ¥  
Qoo 300 ¥    焼酎 Shochu 300 ¥    ミルク Milk 250 ¥

#### デザート

アイスクリーム Ice cream 240 ¥    チョコレートセーキ Chocolate shake 250 ¥  
アップルパイ Apple pie 300 ¥    チーズケーキ Cheese cake 350 ¥

**Cultural Differences:** In the average Japanese restaurant, when food is done, it is sent out immediately regardless of whether or not the other people's food in one's party is ready. Refills are rare. Coffee might be refilled, but you may get charged double. When sitting down you are given a wet towel called a おしぼり to wipe your hands, a menu, and some tea and



## Useful Expressions

1. メニューを見せてください。  
Please show me a menu.

2. お腹が空きましたか。  
Are you hungry?

Bad	まずい	Sour	すっぱい	Sweet	甘い	Bitter	苦い
Weak; thin	薄い	Strong; thick	濃い	Hot	熱い	Cold	冷たい

3. Xがおいしそうですね。  
X looks good.

4. 安いレストランです。  
It's a cheap restaurant.

5. じゃあ、それにしましょう。  
Well, let's go with that.

6. のどが渴きました。  
I'm thirsty.

7. 寿司二人前お願いします。  
Sushi for two please.

8. (お) 酒がお好きですか。  
Do you like sake?

9. お飲み物は?  
Drinks?

10. 蛋白質 = Protein  
= Fat

炭水化物 = Carbohydrates

脂肪

11. 相席をお願いします。  
Please let another party sit with you.

**Culture Note:** You may be asked this in Japan in inexpensive restaurants when it's really crowded and there's really nothing that you can do about it.

12. 少々お待ちください。  
Please wait one moment.

13. いらっしゃいませ。何名ですか。こちらへどうぞ。  
Welcome. How many will there be? Please follow me.

14. ビールをもう一本ください。  
Give me one more beer please.

Note: Beer in this case is most likely 缶ビール.

15. てんぷらを一人前お願いします。  
Tempura for one please.

16. 火にかける。  
To put on the stove.

17. 胡椒を加えて味をつける。  
To put in flavor by adding pepper.

18. お勘定は〇〇になります。  
Your bill comes out to XX.

19. お待たせしました。(Waiter)  
I'm sorry for having made you wait.

20. 「ここでお召し上がりですか、それともお持ち帰りですか」「ここで食べます。」  
“Is this to eat here or to-go?” “For here”.

21. すし屋へ行きましょうか。  
How about going to the sushi shop?

22. たいてい何を飲みますか。  
What do you generally have to drink?

23. ご注文はお決まりですか。  
Have you decided on what you will order?

24. 私に払わせてください。  
Allow me to pay.

25. はい、全部でX円になります。  
Yes, this comes out to in total to X yen.

26. 何に {しましう・なさいま} か。  
What shall I get you?

27. お勘定をお願いします。  
Please bring us the bill.

28. 「お茶をもう一杯いかがでしょうか？」 「ええ、いただきます」  
"Can I get you another glass of tea?" "Yes, thank you".

29. コーヒーのお代わりはいかがですか。  
Would you like a refill of coffee?

**Culture Note:** When you are given something to eat or drink, say "いただきます". When leaving, you say "ご馳走（さま（でした））". The hostess may respond with "お粗末さまでした".

30. お水をください。  
Water, please.

**Female Speech Note:** お is more frequently used by women in common items such as these. Similar words include お肉 "meat" and お冷 "cold water".

31. どこかおいしいレストランを教えてください。  
Could you tell me of delicious restaurants anywhere?

32. ずいぶん色々なものがあるんですね。  
There are a lot of items. (In reference to the menu)

### More Key Words

ナイフ	Knife	フォーク	Fork	スプーン	Spoon	はし	Chopsticks
(お) 皿	Plate	ナプキン	Napkin	ウェイター	Waiter	ウェイトレス	Waitress

## Rice and Noodles

normal Rice is the most important food in Japan. ご飯, cooked rice, is even synonymous to

"meal". 米<sup>こめ</sup> is uncooked rice. Many things are made from rice.

---

### 酒: The Japanese Drink

酒, also known as 日本酒<sup>にほんしゅ</sup>, is a rice-based alcoholic beverage. It's served at room temperature or heated. It can be served in お猪口<sup>ちょこ</sup>, small cylindrical cups, 杯<sup>さかずき</sup> which are flat saucer-like cups, or 杓<sup>ます</sup> which are wooden box-like cups. One shouldn't fill one's own cup: it should be done for you. To ask:

33. (お) 酒をもう一杯ください。  
One more cup please.

Be sure to hold your cup to the 徳利<sup>とっくり</sup>--the flask--as a gesture of acceptance. 乾杯<sup>かんぱい</sup> (Cheers)!

---

### More Rice

どんぶり<sup>どんぶり</sup>  
丼 : 丼 is a bowl of hot steamed rice with toppings.

せんべい<sup>せんべい</sup>  
煎餅: Rice crackers in all shapes and flavors.

チャーハン・炒飯: Chinese fried rice.

にぎ<sup>にぎ</sup>  
お握り: Balls of rice with filling.

もち<sup>もち</sup>  
餅: Rice cake.

すし: すし is vinegar rice topped/mixed with seafood & vegetables. There are many kinds.

---

### Noodles 麺類<sup>めんるい</sup>

うどん (Japanese): うどん is a wheat-flour noodle. There are several kinds of dishes.

そば (Japanese): そば is buckwheat. It is either served chilled with a dipping sauce or in a hot broth.

そうめん<sup>そうめん</sup> (Japanese): そうめん are white thin wheat flour noodles dipped in めん汁<sup>つゆ</sup> and served cold. The noodles are often placed in a flume in cold water and the diners have to catch them.

ラーメン (Chinese): ラーメン is made of Chinese-style wheat noodles and is served with a meat and often flavored with soy sauce or 味噌<sup>みそ</sup> (soybean paste).

normal

## Dishes

Deep-fry	揚げ物（あげもの）	Pot cooking	鍋物（なべもの）	Stews	煮物（にももの）
Grilled	焼き物（やきもの）	Soups	吸い物（すいもの）	Pickled	漬物（つけもの）
Stir-fried	炒め物（いためもの）	Sashimi	刺し身	Soup (from juice)	汁物（しるもの）

**Word Note:** <sup>つけもの</sup>漬物 also refers to salted foods.

<sup>ふぐ</sup>河豚 (Sashimi): The フグ, puffer fish, is poisonous yet delicious. It is prepared with extreme caution to remove the toxic areas. The Emperor is forbidden to eat it. The liver is apparently the most delicious part, but it's also the part most likely to kill you. フグ is a delicacy <sup>ちんみ</sup>(珍味) .

ギョーザ (Yakimono): Chinese ravioli-dumplings usually filled with pork and vegetables.

<sup>みそ</sup>味噌汁 (Shirumono): <sup>だし</sup>みそ soup is made out of 出汁, stock, and <sup>みそ</sup>paste.

<sup>うなぎ</sup>鰻 (Yakimono): ウナギ is freshwater eel. Saltwater eels are called <sup>あなご</sup>穴子.

しゃぶしゃぶ (Nabemono): しゃぶしゃぶ is made with thinly sliced beef. It is usually served with <sup>とうふ</sup>豆腐, <sup>はくさい</sup>白菜 (Chinese cabbage), <sup>はるひ</sup>春菊 (edible chrysanthemum leaves), <sup>のり</sup>海苔 seaweed, <sup>にんじん</sup>onions, <sup>しいたけ</sup>人參 carrots, <sup>だけ</sup>椎茸 and えのき茸 mushrooms, etc.

<sup>とん</sup>豚カツ (Agemono): Breaded, deep fried pork cutlet.

<sup>やとり</sup>焼き鳥 (Yakimono): Skewered chicken, it can refer to skewered food in general.

<sup>てや</sup>照り焼き (Yakimono): 照り焼き is grilled, broiled, or fried meat glazed in sweet soy sauce.

てんぷら (Agemono): Deep-fried prawns and vegetables.

<sup>よなべ</sup>寄せ鍋 (Nabemono): Seafood hot pot.

<sup>そうに</sup>雑煮 (Shirumono): A soup with <sup>もち</sup>餅 common in New Year's.

<sup>とんじる</sup>豚汁 (Shirumono): Like <sup>みそ</sup>みそ soup with pork.

<sup>うめぼし</sup>梅干 (Tsukemono): 梅干 is pickled <sup>うめ</sup>梅, which are like plums.

からあ

唐揚げ (Agemono): 唐揚げ is bite-size chicken, fish, etc. deep fried.

お好み焼き (Yakimono): Consists of a flour batter, トロロ, 水/出汁, 卵 egg, and shredded キャベツ(cabbage), etc. It is often flavored with mayo.

すきやき (Nabemono): Thinly sliced ビーフ (beef) and vegetables cooked in しょうゆ soy sauce, 出汁 sugar, and sake. It's dipped into bowls of raw egg.

芋煮 (Suimono): A thick potato soup.

薄作り (Sashimi): Finely sliced raw fish. Plate is decorated with shredded だいこん Japanese radish, lemon slice, ginger, and a だいこん-chili mixture with scallions in the center.

弁当 (Miscellaneous): Assorted lunches.

### Delicacies

アンキモ	Anglerfish liver	カラスミ	Salted mullet roe
このわた	Salted sea cucumber entrails	ウニ	Salt/pickled sea urchins

## Drinks

お茶	(Green) tea	酒	Alcohol	ワイン	Wine
ビール	Beer	ウォッカ	Vodka	コーク	Coke
抹茶	Powdered green tea	麦茶	Barley tea	紅茶	Black tea
焼酎	Shochu	桜湯	Cherry blossom tea	水	Water
コーヒー	Coffee	ミルク	Milk	ジュース	Juice
アイスティー	Ice tea	コーラ	Cola	スプライト	Sprite

### Other Unique Drinks

クー	Qoo, a non-carbonated beverage with grape and orange flavors.
ヤクルト	Yakult is a pro-biotic milk-like drink.
カルピス	Calpis is a non-carbonated beverage with a milky taste.

normal

C.C Lemon	A soft drink known for its lemon flavor.
ポカリスエット	A soft/sports drink that has a mild grapefruit flavor.
ラムネ	A soft drink with many flavors.

**Word Note:** For liquor, "straight" is "ストレートで" and "on-ice" is "水<sup>みず</sup>割<sup>わ</sup>りで".

## Western Food 洋食

カキフライ	Breaded oyster	カキエビ	Breaded shrimp
ステーキ	Steak	ポークチョップ	Pork chop
オクラ	Okra	アボカド	Avocado
パイナップル	Pineapple	パパイヤ	Papaya
ネクタリン	Nectarine	カボチャ	Pumpkin
ハンバーガー	Hamburger	ビフテキ	Beef steak
ブドウ	Grape	ブラックベリー	Blackberry
マンゴー	Mango	キーウィ	Kiwi
プラム	Plum	ココナッツ	Coconut
オレンジ	Orange	リンゴ	Apple
ラズベリー	Raspberry	ブルーベリー	Blueberry
ロースト	Roast	シチメンチョウ	Turkey
フライドポテト	French fries	ピザ	Pizza
タコス	Taco	ベーコン	Bacon
スクワッシュ	Squash	ハム	Ham
ホットドッグ	Hot dog	サンドウィッチ	Sandwich
サラダ	Salad	スープ	Soup
オムレツ	Omelet	ソーセージ	Sausage
トマト	Tomato	ピーマン	Bell pepper

# Snacks

デザート (desserts) and おやつ (snacks) are very important, and there is a large variety that you can choose from in Japan.

わがし

和菓子 (Japanese-style sweets)

団子	Rice dumplings	カキ氷	Shaved ice with syrup topping
こんぺいと	Crystal sugar candy	まんじゅう	Sticky rice surrounding a sweet bean center

ようがし

洋菓子 (Western-style sweets)

カステラ	Iberian-style sponge cakes	アイスクリーム	Ice cream
ケーキ	Cake	クッキー	Cookie

## Common Snacks

ハイチュー	Edible chewing candy similar to gum.	ポッキー	Biscuit stick snack
うまい棒	Puff corn snacks similar to Cheetos	コアラのマーチ	Bite-sized cookie snacks

# Seasoning 調味料

辛子	Spicy mustard	酢みそ	Vinegar miso sauce
ケチャップ	Ketchup	二杯酢	Soy vinegar sauce
米酢	Rice vinegar	ふりかけ	Dry condiment sprinkled on rice
しょう油	Soy sauce	ポン酢	Citrus-based sauce
マヨネーズ	Mayonnaise	みりん	Low alcohol rice wine
めんま	From dried bamboo	ラー油	Chili-infused vegetable oil
わさび	Wasabi	こしょう	Pepper
塩	Salt	砂糖	Sugar
辛料	Spices	ショウガ	Ginger

normal



カレー粉	Curry powder	マスタード	Mustard
ソース	Worcestershire sauce	油	Oil/fat

## Other Ingredients

ミカン	Mandarin orange	アユ	Ayu fish
ナマズ	Catfish	ヒジキ	Dark edible seaweed
かずのこ	Herring roe	ニラ	Chinese chives
ナス	Eggplant	サケ	Salmon
イカ	Squid	ハマグリ	Clam
豚肉	Pork	サツマイモ	Sweet potato
梨	Nashi pear	昆布	Kombu
キュウリ	Cucumber	豆	Beans
モモ	Peach	イチゴ	Strawberry
バナナ	Banana	かも肉	Duck
インゲン	String bean	マッシュルーム	Mushroom
ヤマイモ	Yam	唐辛子	Chili pepper
レモン	Lemon	スイカ	Watermelon
レタス	Lettuce	ザクロ	Pomegranate
トウモロコシ	Corn	カブ	Turnip
タコ	Octopus	クリ	Chestnut
ホタテガイ	Scallop	カツオ	Bonito
ほうレンソウ	Spinach	酢	Vinegar
パン粉	Dried bread crumbs	マグロ	Tuna
イクラ	Salmon roe	魚肉	Fish
鶏肉	Chicken	ヒラメ	Flounder
イワシ	Sardine	エビ	Shrimp
アズキ	Azuki red beans	ショウガ	Ginger

normal

## Cookware & Utensils 台所用品

皿	Plate	鍋	Pot	ざる	Colander
フライパン	Fry pan	布巾	Kitchen towel	ふた	Lid
薬缶	Kettle	(お) 箸	Chopsticks	包丁	Kitchen knife
ナイフ	Knife	フォーク	Fork	スプーン	Spoon
炊飯器	Rice cooker	レンジ	Microwave	ガス台	Gas stove
まな板	Cutting board	杓文字	Rice paddle	缶切	Can opener
栓抜き	Bottle opener	流し (台)	Sink	換気扇	Ventilation fan
おたま	Ladle	ポット	Thermos bottle		

## 第163課: Astronomy: The Planets & More

In this vocabulary lesson, we will learn about the planets and basic astronomical terminology. Note that this lesson will be about <sup>てんもんがく</sup>天文学 (アストロノミー) and not astrology <sup>せんせいじゅつ</sup>占星術 (アストロロジー). The difference is that astronomy is a true science whereas astrology is a pseudo-science. Although fascinating with its own realm of terminology, this lesson will focus on the former as the terminology in the field is of practical use.

### The Solar System

Our solar system is called the <sup>たいようけい</sup>太陽系. The Sun in Japanese is <sup>たいよう</sup>太陽, but it also often just goes by 陽・日. The moon in Japanese is 月. The planets of our solar system are as follows:

Mercury	<sup>すいせい</sup> 水星	Venus	<sup>きんせい</sup> 金星 <sup>みょうじょう</sup> 明星	Earth	<sup>ちきゅう</sup> 地球	Mars	<sup>かせい</sup> 火星
Jupiter	<sup>もくせい</sup> 木星	September	<sup>どせい</sup> 土星	Uranus	<sup>てんのうせい</sup> 天王星	Neptune	<sup>かいおうせい</sup> 海王星

Word Note: 明星 is a literary term and not an astronomical term. 金星 is the predominant name in the spoken language.

すいせい つき に  
1. 水星は月と似ている。  
Mercury resembles the moon.

きんせい たいき ほとん にさんかたんそ な  
2. 金星の大気は殆どが二酸化炭素から成っている。  
The atmosphere of Venus is almost completely made up of carbon dioxide.

わたし にんげん す ちきゅう わくせい  
3. 私たち人間が住む地球も「惑星」です。  
The Earth that we humans live on is also a “planet.”

かせい いじゅう けいかく じっさい しんこう そんじ  
4. 火星に移住する計画が実際に進行しているのはご存知ですか。  
Did you know that plans to migrate to Mars are actually progressing?

たいようけい いちばんおお わくせい もくせい  
5. 太陽系で一番大きい惑星は木星です。  
The largest planet in the solar system is Jupiter.

もくせい どせい で き  
6. 木星と土星はガスで出来ている。  
Jupiter and Saturn are made of gas.

てんのうせい よこ む  
7. 天王星は横を向いている。  
Uranus is on its side.

かいおうせい ちゅうしんぶ みず こおり な  
8. 海王星の中心部は水の氷とアンモニアから成っている。  
The center of Neptune is made up of water ice and ammonia.

## Important Astronomical Terminology

The chart below provides a healthy list of some of the most important terminology in the field of astronomy. These words encompass many of the words that pervade daily conversations regarding the heavens. Following the chart are plenty of example sentences for you to study past grammar as well as practice using the words introduced below.

Planet	わくせい 惑星	Dwarf Planet	準惑星 矮惑星
Pluto	めいおうせい 冥王星	Kuiper Belt	カイパーベルト
Asteroid	しょうわくせい 小惑星	Asteroid Belt	しょうわくせいたい 小惑星帯
Star	こうせい 恒星 ほし 星	Celestial Body	てんたい 天体

Celestial sphere	てんきゅう 天 球	Nebula	せいうん 星 雲
Milky Way	あま がわ 天の川 ぎんがけい 銀河系	Galaxy	ぎんが 銀河
Galaxy system	ぎんがけい 銀河系	Satellite	えいせい 衛 生
Man-made satellite	じんこうえいせい 人工衛星	Star system	こうせい 恒星システム
Universe	うちゅう 宇 宙	Extraterrestrial	うちゅうじん 宇宙人
Cosmology	うちゅうろん 宇宙論 コスモロジー	Space dust	うちゅうじん 宇宙塵
The Big Bang	ビッグバン	Space adaptation syndrome	うちゅうよ 宇宙酔い
Space weather	うちゅうてんきよほう 宇宙天気予報	Observatory	てんもんだい 天文台
Spaceship	うちゅうせん 宇宙船	International Space Station	こくさいうちゅう 国際宇宙ステーション
Orbit	軌道	Meteorite	いんせき 隕石
Crater	クレーター	Ozone layer	そう オゾン層
Solar eclipse	にっしょく にっしょく 日 蝕 ・ 日 食	Lunar eclipse	げっしょく げっしょく 月 蝕 ・ 月 食
Telescope	ぼうえんきょう 望 遠 鏡	Comet	すいせい 彗 星 ほし ほうき星
Revolution	こうてん 公 転	Cycle	周期
Rotation	じてん 自 転	Atmosphere	たい き けん 大 気 （ 圏 ）
Oort Cloud	くも オールトの雲	NASA	NASA こうくううちゅうきょく アメリカ航空宇宙局
Andromeda Galaxy	アンドロメダ ぎんが 銀河	Dwarf star	わいせい 矮 星
Europa	エウロパ	Titan	タイタン
Blackhole	ブラックホール	Astronaut	うちゅうひこうし 宇宙飛行士
Meteor shower	りゅうせいぐん 流 星 群	Io	イオ

Red giant

せきしよくきよせい  
赤色巨星

Superstar

きよせい  
巨星

## Word Notes:

1. 恒星 is the astronomical term for a “star” whereas 星 is the common day word. Another difference is that 星 may refer to any celestial body, including the Earth and other planets.
2. 彗星 is both the technical word for “comet” and the most frequently used word for it in everyday speech. Colloquially, it may also be ほうき星. This is no different than the English phrase “shooting star.”
3. Colloquially, our galaxy is called 天の川. The technical term is 銀河系, which also refers to galaxy systems in general.
4. Eclipse is 食<sup>しよく</sup>. This, however, is the simplified spelling. It is traditionally spelled as 蝕. Both spellings are still used. In media, though, only the simplified spelling is typically employed.
5. Colloquially, 大気 suffices as the word for atmosphere, but 大気圏 encompasses all parts of the atmosphere up to the boundary between the outer edge and space itself whereas 大気 typically refers just to the part of the atmosphere that we view as air.

## Examples

すいせい      たいよう      もっと      ちか      こうてん      わくせい  
9. 水星は、太陽に最も近く公転している惑星だ。  
Mercury is the planet that revolves closest to the Sun.

きょだい      いんせき      ちきゅう      しょうとつ      かのうせい      なに  
10. 巨大な隕石が地球に衝突する可能性は何パーセントですか。  
What percentage is the possibility that a large meteorite will collide with Earth?

そう      はかい      ちきゅう      とど      しがいせん      りょう      ふ  
11. オゾン層が破壊されると、地球に届く紫外線の量が増える。  
If the ozone layer is destroyed, the amount of ultra-violet rays that reach Earth will increase.

ぜんいん      うちゅうひこうし      うちゅうよ      けいけん  
12. ほぼ全員の宇宙飛行士がなんらかの宇宙酔いを経験します。  
Almost all astronauts experience some amount of space adaptation syndrome.

こうみつど      だいしつりょう      てんたい      ぶっしつ      ひかり      こ  
13. ブラックホールとは高密度かつ大質量の天体で、物質だけでなく光さえも吸い込んで  
しまうほど強力な重力を持っている。  
A blackhole is a celestial body with high density and great mass that holds such strong  
gravity that it not only swallows matter but even light.

ぼく      くるま      りゅうせいぐん      み      い  
14. 僕はひとり車で流星群を見に行きました。

normal

I went by myself via car to go see a meteor shower.

てんのうせい    じてんじく    よこだお

15. 天王星の自転軸が横倒しになっている。

The axle of Uranus is on its side.

かいきげっしょく    かんさつ

16. みんなで皆既月食を観察しましょう。

Let's all observe a total lunar eclipse together.

かいきにっしょく

**Word Note:** The antonym of 皆既月食 is 皆既日食.

ぼうえんきょう    こ    ほし    さが

17. 望遠鏡を覗き込んで、ほうき星を探した。

I looked into a telescope and searched for shooting stars.

よそら    み    あ    あま    がわ    み

18. 夜空を見上げたら、天の川が見えました。

I looked up at the night sky and could see the Milky Way.

うちゅうせん    の    ゆめ    み

19. 宇宙船に乗る夢を見ました。

I dreamed of riding in a spaceship.

じゅうはっ こ    かつかざん

20. イオには、18 個の活火山があります。

There are eighteen active volcanoes on Io.

ち    か    うみ

21. エウロパの地下に海があるかもしれない。

There may be a sea below the surface of Europa.

つき    うらがわ    いんせきしょうとつ    あ

22. 月の裏側には、隕石衝突でクレーターがボコボコと開いている。

On the backside of the moon, there are craters everywhere due to meteorite impacts.

てんもんだい    ほし    み

23. 天文台で星を観たいです。

I want to see stars at an observatory.

うちゅう    ぼうちよう    つづ

24. 宇宙は膨脹し続けている。

The universe continues to expand.

うちゅうじん    そんざい    かくりつ    たか    ちきゅう    こ    な    ぜ

25. 宇宙人が存在する確率が高いなら地球に来ないのは何故だろうか。

Why is it that if the probability that extraterrestrials is so high yet they haven't come to Earth?

かせい    か    こ    ちい    えいせい

26. 火星は過去にフォボスとデイモスのような小さい衛星がいくつかあったとされています。

It is said that Mars in the past had several small satellites like Phobos and Deimos.

normal

てんたい み てき ばしよ  
27. 天体を見るのに適した場所はどこですか。  
Where is a suitable place to see celestial bodies?

しょうわくせいたい げんし たいようけい なごり み げんし じょうたい たも  
28. 小惑星帯は原始の太陽系の名残に見えるが、原始の状態を保っているわけではない。  
The asteroid belt may look like relics of the primal solar system, but it is not the case that it maintains a primal condition.

こくさいうちゅう がっしゅうこく にっぽん およ おうしゅううちゅうきかん  
29. 国際宇宙ステーションとは、アメリカ合衆国、ロシア、日本、カナダ及び欧州宇宙機関  
(ESA) が協力して運用している宇宙ステーションである。  
The International Space Station is a space station which is operated in collaboration of the United States, Russia, Japan, Canada and the European Space Agency (ESA).

うちゅうじん ちきゅう お そそ うちゅう ちり  
30. 宇宙塵は地球に降り注ぐ宇宙の塵である。  
Space dust is dust from space that falls to Earth.

たいきけん ちきゅう と ま うす たいき そう  
31. 大気圏とは、地球を取り巻く薄い大気の層のことである。  
The atmosphere is the thin stratum of air that surrounds Earth.

わくせい こうてん きどう はず  
32. なぜ惑星は公転の起動から外れないのか。  
Why is it that planets don't leave their revolution orbits?

うちゅう かいびやくちよくご うちゅう ぼうちよう はじ じてん さ  
33. ビッグバンとは、宇宙の開闢直後に宇宙の膨張が始まった時点を示します。  
The Big Bang indicates the point in time when universe expansion began immediately after the creation of the universe.

めいおうせい じゅんわくせい てんけいれい  
34. 冥王星は準惑星の典型例である。  
Pluto is a classic example of a dwarf planet.

うちゅうぼうえんきよう かんそく ぎんが うご はあく  
35. ハッブル宇宙望遠鏡の観測データにより、アンドロメダ銀河の動きが把握されるようになった。  
The movement of the Andromeda Galaxy was ascertained by means of observational data from the Hubble Space Telescope.

## 第162課: Food

にほんりょうり わしょく  
Japanese food, 日本料理・和食・日本食, is one of the most interesting things about Japan.  
At the end of this lesson, you will be able to go to a Japanese restaurant (日本料理屋) and talk about what's in your food, how to ask for your food, etc.

## At a Restaurant

### お品書き (Menu)

お好み焼き Okonomiyaki 700 ¥ 天丼 Tendon 780 ¥ 寿司 Sushi 1400 ¥ すき  
焼き Sukiyaki 1200 ¥  
刺し身 Sashimi 1350 ¥ 狐そば Kitsune soba 700 ¥ 狐うどん Kitsune udon  
700 ¥ サラダ Salad 400 ¥  
お握りずし Onigirizushi 1000 ¥ ざるそば Zaru soba 550 ¥ しゃぶしゃぶ  
Shabushabu 1250 ¥

### お飲み物

ビール Beer 310 ¥ お茶 Tea 300 ¥ 水 Water 100 ¥ コーク Coke  
250 ¥  
Qoo 300 ¥ 焼酎 Shochu 300 ¥ ミルク Milk 250 ¥

### デザート

アイスクリーム Ice cream 240 ¥ チョコレートセーキ Chocolate shake 250 ¥  
アップルパイ Apple pie 300 ¥ チーズケーキ Cheese cake 350 ¥

**Cultural Differences:** In the average Japanese restaurant, when food is done, it is sent out immediately regardless of whether or not the other people's food in one's party is ready. Refills are rare. Coffee might be refilled, but you may get charged double. When sitting down you are given a wet towel called a おしぼり to wipe your hands, a menu, and some tea and water.

---

### Useful Expressions

1. メニューを見せてください。  
Please show me a menu.

2. お腹が空きましたか。  
Are you hungry?

Bad	まずい	Sour	すっぱい	Sweet	甘い	Bitter	苦い
Weak; thin	薄い	Strong; thick	濃い	Hot	熱い	Cold	冷たい

normal  
メニューがおいしそうですね。



X looks good.

4. 安いレストランです。  
It's a cheap restaurant.

5. じゃあ、それにしましょう。  
Well, let's go with that.

6. のどが<sup>かわ</sup>渴きました。  
I'm thirsty.

7. 寿司<sup>すし</sup>二人前<sup>ににんまえ</sup>お願いします。  
Sushi for two please.

8. (お) 酒がお好きですか。  
Do you like sake?

9. お飲み物は?  
Drinks?

たんぱくしつ		たんすいかぶつ		しぼう
10. 蛋白質	= Protein	炭水化物	= Carbohydrates	脂肪
= Fat				

11. 相席<sup>あいせき</sup>お願いします。  
Please let another party sit with you.

**Culture Note:** You may be asked this in Japan in inexpensive restaurants when it's really crowded and there's really nothing that you can do about it.

12. 少々<sup>しょうしょう</sup>お待ちください。  
Please wait one moment.

13. いらっしゃいませ。<sup>なんめい</sup>何名ですか。こちらへどうぞ。  
Welcome. How many will there be? Please follow me.

14. ビールをもう一本ください。  
Give me one more beer please.

Note: Beer in this case is most likely 缶ビール.

15. てんぷらを一人前お願いします。  
Tempura for one please.

normal

16. 火にかける。

To put on the stove.

17. 胡椒こしょうを加えて味あじをつける。

To put in flavor by adding pepper.

18. お勘定かんじょうは〇〇になります。

Your bill comes out to XX.

19. お待たせしました。(Waiter)

I'm sorry for having made you wait.

20. 「ここでお召めし上がりですか、それともお持ち帰りですか」「ここで食べます。」  
“Is this to eat here or to-go?” “For here”.

21. すし屋やへ行きましょうか。

How about going to the sushi shop?

22. たいてい何を飲みますか。

What do you generally have to drink?

23. ご注文きはお決まりですか。

Have you decided on what you will order?

24. 私はらに払はらわせてください。

Allow me to pay.

25. はい、全部ぜんぶでX円えんになります。

Yes, this comes out to in total to X yen.

26. 何に {しましう・なさいま} か。

What shall I get you?

27. お勘定かんじょうをお願ねがいします。

Please bring us the bill.

28. 「お茶ちゃをもう一杯いっぱいいかがでしょうか?」「ええ、いただきます」

“Can I get you another glass of tea?” “Yes, thank you”.

29. コーヒーのお代かわりはいかがですか。

Would you like a refill of coffee?

**Culture Note:** When you are given something to eat or drink, say "いただきます". When leaving, you say "ご馳走 (さま (でした) )". The hostess may respond with "お粗末さまでした".

30. お水をください。  
Water, please.

**Female Speech Note:** お is more frequently used by women in common items such as these. Similar words include お肉<sup>にく</sup> "meat" and お冷<sup>ひや</sup> "cold water".

31. どこかおいしいレストランを教えてください。  
Could you tell me of delicious restaurants anywhere?

32. ずいぶん色々なものがあるんですね。  
There are a lot of items. (In reference to the menu)

### More Key Words

ナイフ	Knife	フォーク	Fork	スプーン	Spoon	はし	Chopsticks
(お) 皿 <sup>さら</sup>	Plate	ナプキン	Napkin	ウェイター	Waiter	ウェイトレス	Waitress

## Rice and Noodles

Rice is the most important food in Japan. ご飯<sup>はん</sup>, cooked rice, is even synonymous to "meal". 米<sup>こめ</sup> is uncooked rice. Many things are made from rice.

---

### 酒: The Japanese Drink

酒, also known as 日本酒<sup>にほんしゅ</sup>, is a rice-based alcoholic beverage. It's served at room temperature or heated. It can be served in お猪口<sup>ちょこ</sup>, small cylindrical cups, 杯<sup>さかずき</sup> which are flat saucer-like cups, or 杓<sup>ます</sup> which are wooden box-like cups. One shouldn't fill one's own cup: it should be done for you. To ask:

33. (お) 酒をもう一杯ください。  
One more cup please.

Be sure to hold your cup to the 徳利<sup>とっくり</sup>--the flask--as a gesture of

normal

acceptance. <sup>かんぱい</sup>乾杯 (Cheers)!

---

### More Rice

<sup>どんぶり</sup>丼 : 丼 is a bowl of hot steamed rice with toppings.

<sup>せんべい</sup>煎餅: Rice crackers in all shapes and flavors.

チャーハン・炒飯: Chinese fried rice.

<sup>にぎ</sup>お握り: Balls of rice with filling.

<sup>もち</sup>餅: Rice cake.

すし: すし is vinegar rice topped/mixed with seafood & vegetables. There are many kinds.

---

### Noodles <sup>めんるい</sup>麺類

うどん (Japanese): うどん is a wheat-flour noodle. There are several kinds of dishes.

そば (Japanese): そば is buckwheat. It is either served chilled with a dipping sauce or in a hot broth.

<sup>そうめん</sup>素麺 (Japanese): そうめん are white thin wheat flour noodles dipped in <sup>めんじゆ</sup>めん汁 and served cold. The noodles are often placed in a flume in cold water and the diners have to catch them.

ラーメン (Chinese): ラーメン is made of Chinese-style wheat noodles and is served with a meat and often flavored with soy sauce or <sup>みそ</sup>味噌 (soybean paste).

## Dishes

Deep-fry	揚げ物 (あげもの)	Pot cooking	鍋物 (なべもの)	Stews	煮物 (にもの)
Grilled	焼き物 (やきもの)	Soups	吸い物 (すいもの)	Pickled	漬物 (つけもの)
Stir-fried	炒め物 (いためもの)	Sashimi	刺し身	Soup (from juice)	汁物 (しるもの)

<sup>つけもの</sup>**Word Note:** 漬物 also refers to salted foods.

normal

<sup>ふぐ</sup>  
河豚 (Sashimi): The フグ, puffer fish, is poisonous yet delicious. It is prepared with extreme caution to remove the toxic areas. The Emperor is forbidden to eat it. The liver is apparently the most delicious part, but it's also the part most likely to kill you. フグ is a delicacy (<sup>ちんみ</sup>珍味) .

ギョーザ (Yakimono): Chinese ravioli-dumplings usually filled with pork and vegetables.

<sup>みそしる</sup>  
味噌汁 (Shirumono): <sup>だし</sup>みそ soup is made out of 出汁, stock, and <sup>みそ</sup>paste.

<sup>うなぎ</sup>  
鰻 (Yakimono): ウナギ is freshwater eel. Saltwater eels are called <sup>あなご</sup>穴子.

しゃぶしゃぶ (Nabemono): <sup>しゃぶしゃぶ</sup> is made with thinly sliced beef. It is usually served with <sup>とうふ</sup>豆腐, <sup>はくさい</sup>白菜 (Chinese cabbage), <sup>はるきく</sup>春菊 (edible chrysanthemum leaves), <sup>のり</sup>海苔 seaweed, <sup>にんじん</sup>人参 carrots, <sup>しいたけ</sup>椎茸 and <sup>だけ</sup>えのき茸 mushrooms, etc.

<sup>とん</sup>  
豚カツ (Agemono): Breaded, deep fried pork cutlet.

<sup>やとり</sup>  
焼き鳥 (Yakimono): Skewered chicken, it can refer to skewered food in general.

<sup>てや</sup>  
照り焼き (Yakimono): 照り焼き is grilled, broiled, or fried meat glazed in sweet soy sauce.

てんぷら (Agemono): Deep-fried prawns and vegetables.

<sup>よなべ</sup>  
寄せ鍋 (Nabemono): Seafood hot pot.

<sup>そうに</sup>  
雑煮 (Shirumono): A soup with <sup>もち</sup>餅 common in New Year's.

<sup>とんじる</sup>  
豚汁 (Shirumono): Like <sup>みそ</sup>みそ soup with pork.

<sup>うめぼし</sup>  
梅干 (Tsukemono): 梅干 is pickled <sup>うめ</sup>梅, which are like plums.

<sup>からあ</sup>  
唐揚げ (Agemono): 唐揚げ is bite-size chicken, fish, etc. deep fried.

<sup>このや</sup>  
お好み焼き (Yakimono): Consists of a flour batter, トロロ, <sup>みず</sup>水/出汁, <sup>だし</sup>卵 egg, and shredded <sup>たまご</sup>キャベツ (cabbage), etc. It is often flavored with mayo.

すきやき (Nabemono): Thinly sliced <sup>ビーフ</sup> (beef) and vegetables cooked in <sup>しょうゆ</sup>醤油 soy sauce, 出汁 sugar, and sake. It's dipped into bowls of raw egg.

<sup>いもに</sup>  
芋煮 (Suimono): A thick potato soup.

<sup>うすづく</sup>  
薄作り (Sashimi): Finely sliced raw fish. Plate is decorated with shredded <sup>だいこん</sup>大根 Japanese radish, lemon slice, ginger, and a <sup>だいこん</sup>大根-chili mixture with scallions in the center.

<sup>べんとう</sup>  
弁当 (Miscellaneous): Assorted lunches.

---

## Delicacies

normal

アンキモ	Anglerfish liver	カラスミ	Salted mullet roe
このわた	Salted sea cucumber entrails	ウニ	Salt/pickled sea urchins

## Drinks

お茶	(Green) tea	酒	Alcohol	ワイン	Wine
ビール	Beer	ウォッカ	Vodka	コーク	Coke
抹茶	Powdered green tea	麦茶	Barley tea	紅茶	Black tea
焼酎	Shochu	桜湯	Cherry blossom tea	水	Water
コーヒー	Coffee	ミルク	Milk	ジュース	Juice
アイスティー	Ice tea	コーラ	Cola	スプライト	Sprite

### Other Unique Drinks

クー	Qoo, a non-carbonated beverage with grape and orange flavors.
ヤクルト	Yakult is a pro-biotic milk-like drink.
カルピス	Calpis is a non-carbonated beverage with a milky taste.
C.C Lemon	A soft drink known for its lemon flavor.
ポカリスエット	A soft/sports drink that has a mild grapefruit flavor.
ラムネ	A soft drink with many flavors.

**Word Note:** For liquor, "straight" is "ストレートで" and "on-ice" is "水割り<sup>みずわ</sup>で".

## Western Food 洋食

カキフライ	Breaded oyster	カキエビ	Breaded shrimp
ステーキ	Steak	ポークチョップ	Pork chop
オクラ	Okra	アボカド	Avocado

normal

パイナップル	Pineapple	パパイヤ	Papaya
ネクタリン	Nectarine	カボチャ	Pumpkin
ハンバーガー	Hamburger	ビフテキ	Beef steak
ブドウ	Grape	ブラックベリー	Blackberry
マンゴー	Mango	キーウィ	Kiwi
プラム	Plum	ココナッツ	Coconut
オレンジ	Orange	リンゴ	Apple
ラズベリー	Raspberry	ブルーベリー	Blueberry
ロースト	Roast	シチメンチョウ	Turkey
フライドポテト	French fries	ピザ	Pizza
タコス	Taco	ベーコン	Bacon
スクワッシュ	Squash	ハム	Ham
ホットドッグ	Hot dog	サンドウィッチ	Sandwich
サラダ	Salad	スープ	Soup
オムレツ	Omelet	ソーセージ	Sausage
トマト	Tomato	ピーマン	Bell pepper

## Snacks

デザート (desserts) and おやつ (snacks) are very important, and there is a large variety that you can choose from in Japan.

### わ が し 和菓子 (Japanese-style sweets)

団子	Rice dumplings	カキ氷	Shaved ice with syrup topping
こんぺいと	Crystal sugar candy	まんじゅう	Sticky rice surrounding a sweet bean center

### よ う が し 洋菓子 (Western-style sweets)

カステラ	Iberian-style sponge cakes	アイスクリーム	Ice cream
ケーキ	Cake	クッキー	Cookie

### Common Snacks

ハイ チュー	Edible chewing candy similar to gum.	ポッキー	Biscuit stick snack
うまい棒	Puff corn snacks similar to Cheetos	コアラのマー チ	Bite-sized cookie snacks

## Seasoning 調味料

辛子	Spicy mustard	酢みそ	Vinegar miso sauce
ケチャップ	Ketchup	二杯酢	Soy vinegar sauce
米酢	Rice vinegar	ふりかけ	Dry condiment sprinkled on rice
しょう油	Soy sauce	ポン酢	Citrus-based sauce
マヨネーズ	Mayonnaise	みりん	Low alcohol rice wine
めんま	From dried bamboo	ラー油	Chili-infused vegetable oil
わさび	Wasabi	こしょう	Pepper
塩	Salt	砂糖	Sugar
香辛料	Spices	ショウガ	Ginger
カレー粉	Curry powder	マスタード	Mustard
ソース	Worcestershire sauce	油	Oil/fat

## Other Ingredients

ミカン	Mandarin orange	アユ	Ayu fish
ナマズ	Catfish	ヒジキ	Dark edible seaweed
かずのこ	Herring roe	ニラ	Chinese chives
ナス	Eggplant	サケ	Salmon

normal



イカ	Squid	ハマグリ	Clam
豚肉	Pork	サツマイモ	Sweet potato
梨	Nashi pear	昆布	Kombu
キュウリ	Cucumber	豆	Beans
モモ	Peach	イチゴ	Strawberry
バナナ	Banana	かも肉	Duck
インゲン	String bean	マッシュルーム	Mushroom
ヤマイモ	Yam	唐辛子	Chili pepper
レモン	Lemon	スイカ	Watermelon
レタス	Lettuce	ザクロ	Pomegranate
トウモロコシ	Corn	カブ	Turnip
タコ	Octopus	クリ	Chestnut
ホタテガイ	Scallop	カツオ	Bonito
ほうレンそう	Spinach	酢	Vinegar
パン粉	Dried bread crumbs	マグロ	Tuna
イクラ	Salmon roe	魚肉	Fish
鶏肉	Chicken	ヒラメ	Flounder
イワシ	Sardine	エビ	Shrimp
アズキ	Azuki red beans	ショウガ	Ginger

## Cookware & Utensils 台所用品

皿	Plate	鍋	Pot	ざる	Colander
フライパン	Fry pan	布巾	Kitchen towel	ふた	Lid
薬缶	Kettle	(お) 箸	Chopsticks	包丁	Kitchen knife
ナイフ	Knife	フォーク	Fork	スプーン	Spoon
炊飯器	Rice cooker	レンジ	Microwave	ガス台	Gas stove
まな板	Cutting board	杓文字	Rice paddle	缶切	Can opener

normal

栓抜き	Bottle opener	流し（台）	Sink	換気扇	Ventilation fan
おたま	Ladle	ポット	Thermos bottle		

## 第165課: Adjective Nominalization I: ～さ & ～み

There are some set phrases in Japanese that involve adjectives becoming nominalized by simply being left as is. As quick examples, consider the following set phrases.

- 1a. 酸いも甘いも噛み分ける。
- 1b. 酸っぱいも甘いもよく心得ている。  
To know full well about the world.  
Literally: To fully distinguish between sour and sweet.

Typically, however, ～さ and ～み are used to nominalize adjectives, with ～め and ～き two other methods. The resulting products of these endings are not completely interchangeable.

### ～さ

～さ nominalizes an adjective objectively. Nouns with ～さ can either be concrete or feel as if they are. Not only can you find it after 形容詞, but you can also find it after 形容動詞 of both native and Sino-Japanese origin as well as loans from other languages.

1. 長さはどれくらいですか。  
How long is it?
2. <sup>うれ</sup>嬉しさを<sup>か</sup>噛み<sup>し</sup>締める。  
To enjoy happiness.
3. <sup>むてっぼう</sup>無鉄砲さだけは<sup>おやゆず</sup>親譲り。(皮肉的)  
Only recklessness is from (his) parents.
4. 安定の早さ  
Rapidity of stability
5. 薬の飲みにくさ  
Difficulty of taking medicine
6. その花の美しさに感動しました。  
I was moved by the flower's beauty.

### 7. モダンさのコントラスト

normal

## Modernity contrast

8. 強さで成し遂げる。

To accomplish with strength.

9. 土地の値段は広さと {利便性・便利さ △} で変わります。

The price of land changes according to the size and convenience.

10. 打撃の強さは木を倒すほどでした。

The blow was strong enough to knock down a tree.

11. 設備投資の弱さは競争力に大きなマイナスになるだろう。

The weakness of capital investment could become a big minus to competitiveness.

12. 幸登は故郷の讃岐うどんが食べたさに日帰りで帰省することにした。

Wanting to eat his hometown's Sanuki udon, Yukito decided to go back home for the day.

**Grammar Note:** This shows that ～さ can be used with ～たい phrases.

13. 嵐の前の静けさだね。

It's the lull before the storm.

**Form Note:** 静けさ is from the Classical Japanese 静けし. Note, though, that 静かさ does exist because 静けし and 静かなり were different words then. 静かさ describes the objective quietness of something whereas 静けさ describes quietness in the sense of tranquility, emphasizing that quietness is a prerequisite.

**Warning Note:** 大げさ is not an example of this. The true spelling is 大袈裟, and this is not 当て字. Rather, 袈裟 in this phrase comes from 袈裟懸け, meaning "slashing someone diagonally from the shoulders" in this instance. This eventually led to its adjectival meaning of "grandiose".

14. 若さに免じて許す。

To forgive out of consideration of (the person's) youth.

## ～み

～み nominalizes an adjective **subjectively**. So, ～み shows that there is some sort of **condition or nature**. It may also show the "location" of a certain condition. For example, 高み means "elevated place". The 当て字 味 is often used to write ～み.

Grammatically speaking, ～み is very limited as to what it may attach to. It must only attach

to simple adjectives (単純形容詞) such as 苦い. Derived adjectives, compound adjectives, and adjectives with repeating parts like 美々しい, cannot be used with ～み. This is the complete opposite with ～さ.

Most of the adjective it can be used with refer to sight, hearing, hues, significance, etc. However, even this is not good enough. The chart below has almost all existing examples in Modern Japanese. To really know how み works, you have to investigate into each one. Some commonalities exist between similar words, but that's about it.

赤み	黒み	白み	黄み	黄色み
臭み	深み	浅み	高み	低み
丸み	重み	厚み	温かみ	柔らかみ
温み	軽み	強み	弱み	痛み
苦み	甘み	旨み	辛み	酸っぱみ
痒み	悲しみ	面白み	楽しみ	しょっぱみ
有り難み	おかしみ	茂み	明るみ	暗み
渋み	苦しみ			

Some of these are so rare that they may not be recognized as existing words. Some may be viewed as coming from verbs (痛む → 痛み; 楽しむ → 楽しみ; 悲しむ → 悲しみ; 明るむ → 明るみ; 暗む → 暗み).

### Word Notes:

1. 白み may be read as 白身 to refer specifically to "egg white", and 白味 can be used to refer to "whiteness" or "egg white".
2. 黒み may also refer to "dark feeling" instead of just "dark hue".
3. 黄み spelled as 黄味 or 黄身 may mean "egg yolk" with the last option only meaning "egg yolk".
4. 浅み (shallow place), 低み (low ground), 軽み (light hue) read as either かるみ or かるみ, and しょっぱみ are often deemed "ungrammatical" due to their rarely used status. It is to note that かるみ is actually a complex word from 芭蕉 works referring to a serious and smooth figure for discovering beauty. It's also important to note that although many Japanese teachers will tell you that しょっぱみ doesn't exist, it's not difficult to find examples of it made by native speakers. Perhaps this is due to confusion from み's multiple usages in

the Japanese lexicon. On one hand, しょっぱみ refers to salty flavor, not saltiness, which then it would need to be replaced with しょっぱさ.

5. 高み, 低み, 深み, and 浅み refer to places of a certain depth.

6. 臭み may be used figuratively.

7. うまみ has several meanings, which include "good taste", "the fifth category of taste 'umami'", "skill", and "profit (商売)". It's interesting to note that umami has been introduced into English.

8. 暗み no longer exists from the adjective 暗い, though it is productive when derived from 暗む.

9. ありがたさ = gratefulness; ありがたみ = value; importance.

10. 重み may refer to a weight that feels heavy, heavy in the feeling sense, or heavy in the abstract sense. Thus, as you can imagine, 強み and 弱み are based on feeling rather than on concrete strength. This sense is also true for 厚み, 温かみ, 柔らかみ, and 温み.

---

### Examples

15. 赤味がかったもの  
Something that's reddish

16. 深みにはまる。  
To go in too far.

17. 明るみに出された。  
It was brought to light.

18. 蛇が<sup>へび しげ</sup>茂みの中でうごめいている。  
A snake is squirming in the grove.

**Word Note:** 茂み is an example where the original adjective is no longer in existence.

19. 母が亡くなって、初めて有難みを実感した。  
With the passing of my mother, I experienced gratefulness for the first time.

20. 新鮮味は欠けるが、多くの人を呼び寄せる企画だ。  
normal

It lacks freshness, but it is a plan that will bring over a lot of people.

**Word Note:** 新鮮み may be viewed as an exceptional case, but 味 in this instance can also be viewed as literally being Sino-Japanese, in which case this would not be a suitable example.

21. 新鮮味に欠ける企画だ。

It's a plan that lacks freshness.

## ～め・目

～め is yet another ending that may nominalize a subset of adjectives. It is even more restricted than み. It may be used with dimensional adjectives (次元形容詞) such as 長い, 短い, 太い, 近い, 遠い, 高い, 低い, 細い, 丸い, 厚い, 薄い, 深い, and 浅い.

There are also other examples such as 多め, 早め, and 古め (not so common). It can also be with some color: 黒め; 白め. You have to be careful, though, because 赤目 does literally mean "red eye(s)". In speaking of which, 黒目 do mean "iris" and 白目 "white of the eye". So, using ひらがな instead is wise to differentiate meanings. These words in which there could be conflicting meanings are best used in phrases. In fact, all of these words are most frequently used in larger phrases.

The purpose of ～め is to show degree or tendency. And, it may also be seen after some verbs. Important examples include 控えめ and 落ち目.

22. 畑を深めに掘り返す。

To tear up a field deep.

23. 肌が黒めの男性

Dark-skinned males

24. 英語が多めのアニソン

Anime songs with a lot of English

25. 色素薄め

Light on pigment

26. 厚めの布

A rather thick cloth

**Spelling Note:** There is no true difference in spelling if you use め or 目 aside from the color examples. However, it is less common when it attaches to adjectives.

## 第166課: Adjective Nominalization II: ～く

The adjectival form ending in く, for a very small amount of adjectives, can be used to create nominalized expressions.

### ～く → Noun Phrase

Words such as 近く, 遠く, 多く, 古く, and 早く are often used as nouns. Such words and phrases involving them are almost always dealing with time and space. Even so, their antonyms are not necessarily applicable with this grammar. For instance, 古く can be used nominally, but 若く cannot.

There are three basic things to know about these phrases that have already been mentioned. To be clear, they are:

- All of these end in く.
- You can view this usage as coming from the deletion of a noun phrase that would be before the adjective in question.
- These phrases are usually about time and space.

These words often take the particles へ, から, に, and まで, but they are almost never used with other particles like が and を. If が and を are to be used, the phrase in question must be fully nominalized. Though there are particles that they can often be used with, this does not mean you can always use them together.

Consider the following example.

- 1a. 友里が遠くに行ってしまった。  
1b. 友里が遠 {い・くの} 場所に行ってしまった。  
Yuri went far away.

2. 空高くを目指す。  
To aim up for the skies.

3. <sup>つばめ</sup>燕が空高くを飛んでいた。  
The swallows were flying up above.

4. <sup>びん</sup>その瓶が遠くから海に浮かんできた。  
The bottle came and floated (here) from afar on the sea.

5. 友里が船橋駅の近くに住んでいる。

normal ri lives near Funabashi Station.

6. その土地の広くに伝えられた。  
(It) was spread throughout the land.

7. こんな遅くにどうしたの？  
What's wrong this late (at night)?

8. ついに目的の谷に<sup>たど</sup>辿り着いた。勢いをつけて証拠品を<sup>しょうこひん</sup>深くに投げ捨てた。  
I finally arrived at the valley, my destination. I then threw the evidence deep down the valley.

9. セスが遅くに出て行った。午前2時を回っていた。  
Seth left when it was late out. It was past 2 A.M.

Several words only work well when used right after a noun, creating very commonly used phrases.

5. 友里が朝早くから夜遅くまで働いていた。  
Yuri was working from early in the morning until late at night.

6. 地中奥深くまで沈み込む。  
To sink deep into the ground.

7. 鮫鰐は海の<sup>あんこう</sup>底深くに生息している。  
Angler fish live deep below on the sea floor.

8. 旦那は<sup>だんな</sup>朝早くに目覚めた。  
My husband woke up early in the morning.

9. 私はほとんど毎日、夜遅くに帰宅します。  
I come home late in the night almost every day.

14. 太平洋の東側にフィリピン<sup>かいこう</sup>海溝がある。百合が<sup>もぐった</sup>その深くに潜った。  
The Philippine Trench is on the east side of the Pacific Ocean. There, Yuri dove deep down.

Though these words have been described as involving the nominalization of adjectives through the連用形, it is actually more probable that these are merely the 省略形 (abbreviated form) of statements with these adjectives in the 連体形 followed by some time/place noun. The evidence for this is the ungrammaticality of Ex. 15. This example shows that you cannot fully exploit them as nouns unless like in Ex. 2.

15a. 月が古くについて語る。 X

15b. <sup>むかし</sup>昔の月について語る。○

normal To tell about the ancient moon.



16. きょう、近くの大学を見学しました。  
Today, I observed a nearby college.

To use these phrases in isolation, there has to be a clear reference to time or space. In Ex. 17, この噂 refers to a time that acts as the referent for 古く. This point of reference is abbreviated out of the phrase, but without such as phrase existing, you get incorrect sentences like 18a.

17. この <sup>うわさ</sup>噂 は古くからある。  
This rumor is ancient.

18a. 優里が古くを振り返った。X

18b. 優里が過去を振り返った。○  
Yuri looked back at the past.

19. その歴史は古くまで <sup>さかのぼ</sup>遡 る。  
The history goes way back.

---

### 多く: The Exceptional Word

多く refers to quantity and can be used freely like any other noun. It does not follow the rules discussed above.

20. 市民の多くから信任を得る。  
To receive trust from most of the townspeople.

21. 血液の <sup>けつえき</sup>流 <sup>りゅうしゅつ</sup>出 を止める機能は動物の <sup>そな</sup>多くに備わっている。  
The function of stopping blood flow is found in a lot of animals.

22. 氷 <sup>ひょうざん</sup>山 がすべて溶けてしまったら、南 <sup>と</sup>極大陸に住む動物の <sup>なんきょくたいりく</sup>多くが <sup>ぜつめつ</sup>絶滅してしまう。  
If all the icebergs were to melt, most of the animals living in Antarctica would go extinct.

23. インターネットによる <sup>しんさつよやく</sup>診察予約が多くの病院で導入されている。  
Reserving medical examinations online is being introduced to many hospitals.

24. 実験結果の <sup>けいこう</sup>多くにこの傾向が見られる。  
This trend is seen in most of the experiment results.

---

### 若く & 浅く: X

若く and 浅く, despite being related to time and space, cannot be used nominally. Yet, their antonyms 古く and 深く can. However, you can still use them in other ways.

25. ワニに食いちぎられたレイヨウの死骸が水中深くまで沈んだ。

The antelope carcass ripped to shreds by the alligator sunk deep below the water.

26a. 転覆した船が浅くに浮いている。X

26b. 転覆した船が浅く浮いている。?

26c. 転覆した船が少し沈んでいる。○

26d. 転覆した船が沈みかけている。

The capsized boat is teetering.

**Sentence Note:** Imagine a boat capsized and teetering above and below the surface. Usually, 26c or 26d would be used to describe this, but 26b is not out of the question. Unlike the rest, it is vague as to whether the boat is permanently jutting out of the water or is fully sunken directly below the water but not deep down.

27. 鋭い棒で突かれて死んだカエルがかなり深いところまで沈んでいる。

The frog that died from being stabbed with a sharp rod has sunk really deep.

28. 深海魚は浅いところに住んでいる。

Deep-sea fish are living in a shallow area.

29. 暗礁に乗り上げた旅客船は、10メートルくらいの浅いところに沈んでいる。

The cruise ship capsized on the coral reefs and is sunken in a shallow spot 10 meters deep.

30a. 妹の友達は若くに亡くなった。X

30b. 妹の友達は若く亡くなった。○

My younger sister's friend died young.

31. 若いときに亡くなる人が多くて、悲しい。

It's sad that a lot of people die when they are young.

32. かなり深くまで潜った。

I dived quite far down.

**Grammar Note:** Using an adverb before these words allows them to stay grammatical as if they were used with another noun before them. However, this cannot be used to expand this pattern to other adjectives.

The adjectives 近い and 遠い are somewhat irregular because they can essentially always be used with the particles に, へ, から, and まで in the forms 近く and 遠く respectively.

33. 流れ着いてよ、どこか遠くへ。あなたの待つ<sup>すてき</sup>素敵な場所へ探しているよ、歌えるような今は音信不通のラブソングを。

Drift somewhere afar. I search for a song that I might sing, one that is now on silent, as I head to the splendid place you are waiting for me.

From DIV's <sup>ひょうりゅう</sup> 漂流彼女.

34. 冥王星の近くからやってきた宇宙人<sup>うちゅうじん</sup>たち、いったい何を<sup>たくら</sup>企んでいるのか？  
What on Earth are the aliens from near Pluto planning?

35. 遠くにある火山<sup>ふんか</sup>が噴火して、まさか火山灰<sup>かざんばい</sup>がここまで降って来るとは思わなかった。  
I never thought that volcanic ash would fall all the way here since the volcano is so far away.

36. 銀閣寺の近くにある<sup>せんとう</sup>銭湯に行きたいです。  
I want to go to a public bath near Ginkakuji.

37. 近くにある公園で桜が満開です。  
The cherry blossoms are in full bloom at the nearby park.

---

### Obligatory ～くの

For 近い, 遠い, 少ない, and 多い, unless part of an entire phrase modifying a noun, they can't be used to modify a noun alone. With exception to 近い and 遠い which we'll get to later, this holds true. In this situation you must use ～くの. However, for 少ない, you have to totally rephrase as 少なくの doesn't exist. 少しの exists, though.

近い学校 X	遠い大学 X	少ない人 X	多い人 X
--------	--------	--------	-------

38. いちばん近いところ  
The closest place

39. 近いうちに (Set Phrase)  
In the near future

**Grammar Note:** You can actually say 近く to mean 近いうちに. The form 近々 also exists. This just goes to show you what might be done to an adjective on an individual basis.

normal

40. 駅に近い。  
It's close to the train station.
41. 駅に近いマンションに住む。  
To live in an apartment close to the train station.
42. 近くの学校  
A school nearby
43. 遠くの大学  
A college far away
44. 日本は地震が多い。  
There are a lot of earthquakes in Japan.
45. 人が少ない。  
There are few people.
46. 少ない人数  
Small amount of people

**Phrase Note:** This phrase is alright because 人数, unlike 人, is a quantity noun. Nevertheless, it's shown to show one way of how to overcome the ungrammaticality of 少ない人.

- 47a. 東京には少しの緑がある。  
47b. 東京には緑が少しある。

It seems that 近い and 遠い actually fall out of the problem if a modifier is implied in context. Although not appropriate for writing, using these two without restriction appears to be a feature of the spoken language among younger people.

48. 遠い学校に通いたくない。  
I don't want to go to a school that's far away.

## 第167課: が VS を

The difference between が and を does not stop at 私が魚を食べる kind of sentences. Though が is called the subject marker and を is called the direct object marker, there are times when they are indeed interchangeable. As to be expected, there are restrictions on when they are interchangeable.

When we learned about the potential form, we saw how が and を can be interchangeable. For instance, you can say 日本語が話せる or 日本語を話せる for "can speak Japanese." The use of を with the potential is highly tied to personal volition. The more volition the agent has, the more likely を will be used and the less likely が is used.

1. 美恵子は自然に美しい歌詞 {が ○ ・ を ???} 書けた。

Mieko was naturally able to write beautiful lyrics.

2. ホームラン {が ○ ・ を ???} 打てた。

I was able to hit a home run.

3. この漢字 {が ・ を} 書ける人はあまりいないでしょうね。

There probably isn't a lot of people who can write this Kanji.

Aside from the potential form, there is interchangeability with 〜たい and phrases of like and dislike (好き and 嫌い). To see if the same concept of control is at work, consider the following.

4. 私は自分のこと {が ・ を} 好きになった。

I've gotten to like myself.

5. 私はポケットモンスター新作 {が ・ を} 買いたいです。

I want to buy the latest Pokemon game.

〜を分かる has traditionally been incorrect, but it first started to appear in the late 1800s and is here to stay. The trigger for why を is being acceptable is a change in perceptible control implied by 分かる.

6. 誰もあたしの気持ちを分かるはずなんてない！

There's no way anyone understands my feelings!

## In-Depth Analysis on が VS を

### 助詞の選択

Japanese grammar generally frowns upon the same particle showing up more than once in a single clause. Consequently, counterexamples involve very specific grammatical structures that trump regular judgment calls.

If a subject that would otherwise take が is used in a potential sentence with an object marked with が, we get XがYがPotential Verb. Of course, XはYがPotential Verb exists and is

normal

most common, but the existence of the former sentence type requires explanation. In reality, we must consider five different sentence types. The least common is V, and we'll give it an ? for being questionable.

- I. 友里が英語を話す。
- II. 友里が英語が話せる。 X\*
- III. 友里が英語を話せる。
- IV. 友里に英語が話せる。
- V. 友里に英語を話せる。(X)

\*: These sentence patterns should be thought of as underlining forms that then may change when spoken. So, in reality, as you can see later below, II is not used as is but is when the subject is marked by は.

Here is a chart that shows the percentages of what the subject is marked with depending on whether the object is marked with either が or を.

I.		Object+が					Object+を				
	Subject	が	は	に	には	にも	が	は	に	にも	には
		0%	25%	8%	51%	16%	50%	49%	0%	1%	0%

**Chart Note:** The subject does not like to have the same particle as the object. には and にも, which indirectly refer to the subject in terms of spontaneous action, should not be used when the object is marked with を as を highlights volition. Spontaneity is the opposite of volition. So, you'd be adding two grammatical opposites together.

There is no doubt that Type III is becoming more pervasive than Type II (remember that Type II essentially surfaces with は on the subject instead), but that doesn't help explain the difference between them at all. We will need to investigate what sort of other grammatical triggers aid in the decision. First, though, let's get back to the somewhat questionable Type V.

- 7a. 俺は涙を流せない。
- 7b. 俺には涙を流せない。 △・X  
I can't shed a tear.

In context, questionable grammar can be made natural. With this in mind, consider the following

- 8. 人間には涙が流せるし、自分は涙を流せないが、涙を流す理由は理解できた。<sup>1</sup>

Man can cry, and so though I myself cannot shed tears, I have now understood the

normal

reason for crying.

Ex. 8 shows us several of the sentence types above in one, which are both frequently used in negative structures, but we do not see Pattern V. This gives us more proof to say that it is ungrammatical. The first part of this sentence lacks volition. The ability to cry is described initially as an innate characteristic of people that may in essence occur spontaneously. Thus, 涙を would be ungrammatical for this meaning. Because には calls for this sort of nuance, を becomes inappropriate.

---

じょうたいき

### 状态的動詞/State Verbs

One way to start thinking about が versus を is whether the verb is in regards to a state. So, we would expect transitive verbs like 理解する and 期待する to favor or mandate the use of が. If not, then が or を, but the internalized relationship between the parts of the sentence would be different.

9a. [友里は英語を話]せる。

9b. [友里は英語が][話せる]。

Yuri can speak English.

10a. [僕はパンを食べ]たい。

10b. [僕はパンが][食べたい]。

I want to eat bread.

11. 日本語 {が・を} 話したいです。

I want to speak Japanese.

12. 日本語 {が・を} 話せますか。

Can you speak Japanese?

13. その文法点 {が・を} 説明できません。

I can't explain that grammar point.

14. 北朝鮮はいつでもミサイルを<sup>はっしゃ</sup>発射できる<sup>きたちょうせん</sup>状態だ。

North Korea is in the state of being able to fire a missile at any time.

We will see again this concept of whether the ending is modifying the verb only or the entire phrase itself. Also, you may be wondering why を is used in Ex. 14 even though the subject is clearly in the state of being able to do the action. That is because of the next factor: control.

The next example is quite intriguing. Using が with 自分 and the like in this sort of grammar is avoided, and wrong at the worst. But, if we replace 自分 with other people nouns, the grammar doesn't change. が is highly related to spontaneity (things happening naturally), and that does help us with examples like Ex.1, but it doesn't help us here. The concept to introduce here is control. The use of を is determined by whether the speaker is able to control the action or want being expressed.

15. あいつは {自分・他人} を <sup>いつわ</sup>偽れる男だ。  
That guy is a man can deceive himself/others.

This sentence demonstrates ultimate control. The subject is able to deceive so much that he himself can be victim to his own deceit. So, there are at least two restrictions to keep in mind: spontaneity and control. The former makes が obligatory, and the latter makes を obligatory.

### ～ようになる & ～ようにする

Consider ～ようになる and ～ようにする. The former is intransitive and the latter is transitive. Thus, you do not see interchangeability with が and を. [] will be used to show how to view the main argument to focus on in these sentences. The content of the brackets could be replaced with other phrases, but the grammar would still be the same.

16. 私は毎日やっているうちに[自然に漢字が書けるよう]になりました。  
I became able to naturally write Kanji while I was studying every day.
17. 4年生が終わるまでに常用漢字を[書けるようにします]。  
I will have (the students) able to write the Joyo Kanji by the time the fourth year students end.
18. 乃理子は独学でハングル {が ○・を?} 書けるようになった。  
Noriko became able to write Hangul through self-study.
19. 乃理子は独学でハングル {が ?・を ○} を読めるようにした。  
Noriko had herself able to read Hangul through self-study.

する has a high degree of 他動詞性 even when it is in a potential phrase. This is further seen when we use する with a potential phrase with the addition of imperative or imperative-like structures such as ～なければならない or the 命令形.



20. 運転中は、絶対にスマホ {が？・を○} 使えないようにしなくてははいけない。  
You must make it that you can't use your smartphone ever while you drive.

21. 引っ越しの前に、不要な物<sup>ふよう</sup> {が？・を○} 捨てられるようにしておけ。  
Before moving, have it that you are able to throw away unneeded things.

---

### 動作主性 = Agency

Another way to look at this issue is agency. Control is directly tied to a sense of agency. Whenever there is a perfective aspect and/or emphasis on result, が becomes inappropriate. Anything related to completion is really perfect for を but not が.

22. 中国に長く住んでいて、英語を話す機会がほとんどなくなったので、英語 {が○・を??} 話せなくなった。  
I lived in China for a long time, and because I basically lost my chances to speak English, I became unable to speak English.

23. いつでも野良猫<sup>のらねこ</sup> {を○・が?} 殺せるわけではない。  
You can't just be able to kill the stray cats whenever.

24. 思ったより早くエッセイを書けてよかった。  
I'm so glad I was able to write the essay earlier than I thought.

25. 冬の間はあの洞窟<sup>どうくつ</sup>にある氷柱<sup>つらら</sup>を溶かせない。<sup>と</sup>  
You can't melt the icicles in that cave during the winter.

26. 量<sup>りょう</sup>が多すぎて、ビール {を○・が?} {飲み干せなかった・飲み切れなかった}。<sup>ほ</sup>  
I was unable to douse down/completely drink} all of the beer because there was just too much.

27. 山口さんがフランス語 {を○・が??} 話せるように、私はフランス人も招待しました。  
To get Yamaguchi-san able to speak French, I also invited French people.

**Sentence Note:** Another reason why が wouldn't be used in Ex. 27 is the doubling of が in the same clause.

28. 神経科学試験の前に韓国語の宿題 {を○・がX} してしまいたい。  
I want to get my Korean homework over before my neurology exam.

29. 子供たちが来る前に、テーブル {を○・がX} 片づけておきたい。

normal

I want to have the table cleared off before the children come.

**Grammar Note:** The interchangeability of が and を also applies to ～たい. Here, the argument that control is the deciding factor seems really strong.

---

### When the Potential Form and Intransitive Form Look the Same

There are instances in which the potential form of a transitive form looks just like the intransitive form. Examples of this situation include 焼ける and 割れる. So, sentences such as パンが焼ける are naturally ambiguous. The agent may or may not be implied. In this case, the meaning difference is minor. Meaning A would be for "the bread to bake" and Meaning B would be "to be able to bake bread". The solution to distinguish them would be to say パンを焼ける instead. Though one would think avoiding ambiguity would be a good thing, not all speakers like ～を焼ける because both the default intransitive meaning and the potential meaning are intransitive.

---

### 自発性 Betrays Us at Times

が is the particle for spontaneity (自発性). It is this sense of lack of control in something spontaneous that makes が the better choice, but for verbs that typically imply a sense of control, the particle を may be seen used nonetheless due to it being the norm rather than being a reflection of the grammatical constraints of the context in question.

30. セスは日本語の<sup>てんさい</sup>天才だから、新しいレッスン {が・を?} 次から次にとめどなく作れた。

Because Seth is a Japanese genius, he was able create new lessons nonstop one after the other.

31. 俺はお前 {が ○・を ○・?} 好きで好きでたまらねーんだよ。

I like you so, so much I can't stand it.

32. 僕はきのうから豚骨スープ {が・を?} 食べたくて、食べたくて仕方なかったので、あの<sup>やたい</sup>屋台に行ってみた。

I wanted to eat tonkotsu soup so bad since yesterday, and so I went to that stand.

Sure, you will have people say that ? is in fact X to them. After all, this is a grey zone. It all has to deal with how the speaker internalizes this concept of spontaneity versus control and how this relates to potential (可能) and desire (願望). We can see how either makes sense for a lot of verbs. In the second example here, the fact that the sentence is overall more colloquial is another factor for why を may appear. The reason why が is always right

in this sort of context is because of its role as the spontaneity particle.

---

### Control ≈ Will

If you have control over something, you usually willfully exercise this control. Because of this, we will likely never see ～を聞こえる or ～を見える because not only are we dealing with completely spontaneous actions, there is no way will (有意志性) or motor action will ever be expressed with them. Spontaneous verbs dealing with the senses are completely contrary in meaning to 他動詞. Remember, grey zones like above are where the semantic domains of two things overlap. Here, we are looking at an extremity. が would have to completely disappear for ～を聞こえる or ～を見える to ever be acceptable. This is more evidence that these verbs are indeed not potential verbs despite what textbooks often claim.

This explanation also explains why ～をできる is not acceptable. Though, ～を＋する Verb can be put into the potential with the same restrictions on が・を交替, the independent verb 出来る must be treated differently.

33. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X}出来る。

Tomoya can speak English.

34. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X}出来るようになった。

Tomoya became able to speak English.

35. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X・???} 出来るようになりたいと思っている。

Tomoya wants to become able to speak English.

36. 知也は英語 {が ??・を ○} 出来るようにしたいと思っている。

Tomoya wants to have himself able to speak English.

We see again how ～ようになる and ～ようにする influence the decision and change the organization of the parts of the sentence. We expect the same things if we use ～ておく.

37. これまでに出来なかった問題をできるようにしておくことを願います。

We ask that you prepare yourself to be able to answer the problems that you haven't been able to up till now.

38. 休み時間になったら、<sup>うわさばなし</sup> 噂話 {が・を} できるようにしておいた。

We had that we could gossip once we were in free time.

39. 学校で使っている問題集の問題が出来るようにしておくこと。

Have it that you can do the problems in the problem set used at school.

40. お金の<sup>かんり</sup>管理をできるようにしておくことが、自分の生活を守る上でも大切になってくる。<sup>2</sup>

Being able to manage one's money before will become even more important than protecting one's way of life.

41. みだりに青年が埋立地<sup>うめたてち</sup>に立ち入るのを防止<sup>ぼうし</sup>することができるようにしておくこと。  
Have it that you can prevent youths from trespassing recklessly into the land reclamation site.

We see that ～することができる will never become ～することができる even when you add ～ておく. Aside from this, there is a lot of variation between が and を. Due to the independent nature of the verb 出来る, we can say that が出来る would still be more common and grammatically safer overall even with the addition of ～ておく.

If using ～ておく worked to get を used before 出来る, then this should work for verbs like 見える. The use of ～ようにする or an imperative phrase should also influence this.

42. 通学路<sup>つうがくろ</sup>の近くでは、どこからでも交通標識<sup>こうつうひょうしき</sup> {が・を} 見えるようにしておきなさい。  
Please make sure that the traffic signs are visible from any direction near the school zone.

---

## 分かる

The use of ～を分かる is here to stay, though it has traditionally been incorrect. Again, the idea that it is English's fault is not plausible. What is certain is that this verb has come to mean 理解する and has taken on the same grammatical rules as it in colloquial/emphatic speech.

Can we, though, find a Japanese route to the emergence of ～を分かる through this discussion? Yes, think about ～を分かろうとする. It would be harder to find Japanese speakers who don't like this example because the volitional pattern ～（よ）うとする is added, which adds the highly transitive する and 'control' related grammar. Similar grammar, then, should also make を is easier to use or at most obligatory.

43. 俺の気持ち {を ○・が X} 分かってくれ！  
Understand my feelings!

---

参照: <https://www.jpfr.go.jp/j/japanese/survey/globe/18/08.pdf>

## 第167課: が VS を

normal

The difference between が and を does not stop at 私が魚を食べる kind of sentences. Though が is called the subject marker and を is called the direct object marker, there are times when they are indeed interchangeable. As to be expected, there are restrictions on when they are interchangeable.

When we learned about the potential form, we saw how が and を can be interchangeable. For instance, you can say 日本語が話せる or 日本語を話せる for "can speak Japanese." The use of を with the potential is highly tied to personal volition. The more volition the agent has, the more likely を will be used and the less likely が is used.

1. 美恵子は自然に美しい歌詞 {が ○・を ???} 書けた。

Mieko was naturally able to write beautiful lyrics.

2. ホームラン {が ○・を ???} 打てた。

I was able to hit a home run.

3. この漢字 {が・を} 書ける人はあまりいないでしょうね。

There probably isn't a lot of people who can write this Kanji.

Aside from the potential form, there is interchangeability with ～たい and phrases of like and dislike (好き and 嫌い). To see if the same concept of control is at work, consider the following.

4. 私は自分のこと {が・を} 好きになった。

I've gotten to like myself.

5. 私はポケットモンスター新作 {が・を} 買いたいです。

I want to buy the latest Pokemon game.

～を分かる has traditionally been incorrect, but it first started to appear in the late 1800s and is here to stay. The trigger for why を is being acceptable is a change in perceptible control implied by 分かる.

6. 誰もあたしの気持ちを分かるはずなんてない！

There's no way anyone understands my feelings!

## In-Depth Analysis on が VS を

### 助詞の選択

Japanese grammar generally frowns upon the same particle showing up more than once in

normal

a single clause. Consequently, counterexamples involve very specific grammatical structures that trump regular judgment calls.

If a subject that would otherwise take が is used in a potential sentence with an object marked with が, we get XがYがPotential Verb. Of course, XはYがPotential Verb exists and is most common, but the existence of the former sentence type requires explanation. In reality, we must consider five different sentence types. The least common is V, and we'll give it an ? for being questionable.

- I. 友里が英語を話す。
- II. 友里が英語が話せる。 X\*
- III. 友里が英語を話せる。
- IV. 友里に英語が話せる。
- V. 友里に英語を話せる。(X)

\*: These sentence patterns should be thought of as underlining forms that then may change when spoken. So, in reality, as you can see later below, II is not used as is but is when the subject is marked by は.

Here is a chart that shows the percentages of what the subject is marked with depending on whether the object is marked with either が or を.

I.		Object+が <sup>a</sup>					Object+を				
	Subject	が <sup>a</sup>	は	に	には	にも	が <sup>a</sup>	は	に	にも	には
		0%	25%	8%	51%	16%	50%	49%	0%	1%	0%

**Chart Note:** The subject does not like to have the same particle as the object. には and にも, which indirectly refer to the subject in terms of spontaneous action, should not be used when the object is marked with を as を highlights volition. Spontaneity is the opposite of volition. So, you'd be adding two grammatical opposites together.

There is no doubt that Type III is becoming more pervasive than Type II (remember that Type II essentially surfaces with は on the subject instead), but that doesn't help explain the difference between them at all. We will need to investigate what sort of other grammatical triggers aid in the decision. First, though, let's get back to the somewhat questionable Type V.

- 7a. 俺は涙を流せない。
  - 7b. 俺には涙を流せない。 △・X
- I can't shed a tear.

normal ntext, questionable grammar can be made natural. With this in mind, consider the

following

8. 人間には涙が流せるし、自分は涙を流せないが、涙を流す理由は理解できた。<sup>1</sup>

Man can cry, and so though I myself cannot shed tears, I have now understood the reason for crying.

Ex. 8 shows us several of the sentence types above in one, which are both frequently used in negative structures, but we do not see Pattern V. This gives us more proof to say that it is ungrammatical. The first part of this sentence lacks volition. The ability to cry is described initially as an innate characteristic of people that may in essence occur spontaneously. Thus, 涙を would be ungrammatical for this meaning. Because には calls for this sort of nuance, を becomes inappropriate.

---

じょうたいき

### 状态的動詞/State Verbs

One way to start thinking about が versus を is whether the verb is in regards to a state. So, we would expect transitive verbs like 理解する and 期待する to favor or mandate the use of が. If not, then が or を, but the internalized relationship between the parts of the sentence would be different.

9a. [友里は英語を話]せる。

9b. [友里は英語が][話せる]。

Yuri can speak English.

10a. [僕はパンを食べ]たい。

10b. [僕はパンが][食べたい]。

I want to eat bread.

11. 日本語 {が・を} 話したいです。

I want to speak Japanese.

12. 日本語 {が・を} 話せますか。

Can you speak Japanese?

13. その文法点 {が・を} 説明できません。

I can't explain that grammar point.

きたちょうせん

14. 北朝鮮はいつでもミサイルを<sup>はっしゃ</sup>発射できる状態だ。

North Korea is in the state of being able to fire a missile at any time.

We will see again this concept of whether the ending is modifying the verb only or the entire

normal

phrase itself. Also, you may be wondering why を is used in Ex. 14 even though the subject is clearly in the state of being able to do the action. That is because of the next factor: control.

---

さいだいげん

### 最大限のコントロール/Ultimate Control

The next example is quite intriguing. Using が with 自分 and the like in this sort of grammar is avoided, and wrong at the worst. But, if we replace 自分 with other people nouns, the grammar doesn't change. が is highly related to spontaneity (things happening naturally), and that does help us with examples like Ex.1, but it doesn't help us here. The concept to introduce here is control. The use of を is determined by whether the speaker is able to control the action or want being expressed.

15. あいつは {自分・他人} <sup>いつわ</sup> を 偽れる男だ。  
That guy is a man can deceive himself/others.

This sentence demonstrates ultimate control. The subject is able to deceive so much that he himself can be victim to his own deceit. So, there are at least two restrictions to keep in mind: spontaneity and control. The former makes が obligatory, and the latter makes を obligatory.

---

### ～ようになる & ～ようにする

Consider ～ようになる and ～ようにする. The former is intransitive and the latter is transitive. Thus, you do not see interchangeability with が and を. [] will be used to show how to view the main argument to focus on in these sentences. The content of the brackets could be replaced with other phrases, but the grammar would still be the same.

16. 私は毎日やっているうちに[自然に漢字が書けるよう]になりました。  
I became able to naturally write Kanji while I was studying every day.
17. 4年生が終わるまでに常用漢字を[書けるようにします]。  
I will have (the students) able to write the Joyo Kanji by the time the fourth year students end.
18. 乃理子は独学でハングル {が ○・を?} 書けるようになった。  
Noriko became able to write Hangul through self-study.
19. 乃理子は独学でハングル {が ?・を ○} を読めるようにした。  
Noriko had herself able to read Hangul through self-study.

normal



する has a high degree of 他動詞性 even when it is in a potential phrase. This is further seen when we use する with a potential phrase with the addition of imperative or imperative-like structures such as ～なければならない or the 命令形.

20. 運転中は、絶対にスマホ {が？・を ○} 使えないようにしなくてはいけない。  
You must make it that you can't use your smartphone ever while you drive.

21. 引っ越しの前に、不要な物<sup>ふよう</sup> {が？・を ○} 捨てられるようにしておけ。  
Before moving, have it that you are able to throw away unneeded things.

---

### 動作主性 = Agency

Another way to look at this issue is agency. Control is directly tied to a sense of agency. Whenever there is a perfective aspect and/or emphasis on result, が becomes inappropriate. Anything related to completion is really perfect for を but not が.

22. 中国に長く住んでいて、英語を話す機会がほとんどなくなったので、英語 {が ○・を ??} 話せなくなった。  
I lived in China for a long time, and because I basically lost my chances to speak English, I became unable to speak English.

23. いつでも野良猫<sup>の ら ねこ</sup> {を ○・が ?} 殺せるわけではない。  
You can't just be able to kill the stray cats whenever.

24. 思ったより早くエッセイを書けてよかった。  
I'm so glad I was able to write the essay earlier than I thought.

25. 冬の間はあの洞窟<sup>どうくつ</sup>にある氷柱<sup>つらら</sup>を溶かせない。<sup>と</sup>  
You can't melt the icicles in that cave during the winter.

26. 量<sup>りょう</sup>が多すぎて、ビール {を ○・が ?} {飲み干<sup>ほ</sup>せなかった・飲み切れなかった}。  
I was unable to douse down/completely drink} all of the beer because there was just too much.

27. 山口さんがフランス語 {を ○・が??} 話せるように、私はフランス人も招待しました。  
To get Yamaguchi-san able to speak French, I also invited French people.

**Sentence Note:** Another reason why が wouldn't be used in Ex. 27 is the doubling of が in the same clause.

28. 神経科学試験の前に韓国語の宿題 {を ○・が X} してしまいたい。  
I want to get my Korean homework over before my neurology exam.

29. 子供たちが来る前に、テーブル {を ○・が X} 片づけておきたい。  
I want to have the table cleared off before the children come.

**Grammar Note:** The interchangeability of が and を also applies to ～たい. Here, the argument that control is the deciding factor seems really strong.

---

### When the Potential Form and Intransitive Form Look the Same

There are instances in which the potential form of a transitive form looks just like the intransitive form. Examples of this situation include 焼ける and 割れる. So, sentences such as パンが焼ける are naturally ambiguous. The agent may or may not be implied. In this case, the meaning difference is minor. Meaning A would be for "the bread to bake" and Meaning B would be "to be able to bake bread". The solution to distinguish them would be to say パンを焼ける instead. Though one would think avoiding ambiguity would be a good thing, not all speakers like ～を焼ける because both the default intransitive meaning and the potential meaning are intransitive.

---

### 自発性 Betrays Us at Times

が is the particle for spontaneity (自発性). It is this sense of lack of control in something spontaneous that makes が the better choice, but for verbs that typically imply a sense of control, the particle を may be seen used nonetheless due to it being the norm rather than being a reflection of the grammatical constraints of the context in question.

30. セスは日本語の<sup>てんさい</sup>天才だから、新しいレッスン {が・を ?} 次から次にとめどなく作れた。

Because Seth is a Japanese genius, he was able create new lessons nonstop one after the other.

31. 俺はお前 {が ○・を ○・ ?} 好きで好きでたまらねーんだよ。  
I like you so, so much I can't stand it.

32. 僕はきのうから豚骨スープ {が・を ?} 食べたくて、食べたくて仕方なかったので、あの<sup>やたい</sup>屋台に行ってみた。

I wanted to eat tonkotsu soup so bad since yesterday, and so I went to that stand.

Sure, you will have people say that ? is in fact X to them. After all, this is a grey zone. It all

has to deal with how the speaker internalizes this concept of spontaneity versus control and how this relates to potential (可能) and desire (願望). We can see how either makes sense for a lot of verbs. In the second example here, the fact that the sentence is overall more colloquial is another factor for why を may appear. The reason why が is always right in this sort of context is because of its role as the spontaneity particle.

---

### Control ≈ Will

If you have control over something, you usually willfully exercise this control. Because of this, we will likely never see ～を聞こえる or ～を見える because not only are we dealing with completely spontaneous actions, there is no way will (有意志性) or motor action will ever be expressed with them. Spontaneous verbs dealing with the senses are completely contrary in meaning to 他動詞. Remember, grey zones like above are where the semantic domains of two things overlap. Here, we are looking at an extremity. が would have to completely disappear for ～を聞こえる or ～を見える to ever be acceptable. This is more evidence that these verbs are indeed not potential verbs despite what textbooks often claim.

This explanation also explains why ～をできる is not acceptable. Though, ～を＋する Verb can be put into the potential with the same restrictions on が・を交替, the independent verb 出来る must be treated differently.

33. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X}出来る。

Tomoya can speak English.

34. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X}出来るようになった。

Tomoya became able to speak English.

35. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X・???} 出来るようになりたいと思っている。

Tomoya wants to become able to speak English.

36. 知也は英語 {が ??・を ○} 出来るようにしたいと思っている。

Tomoya wants to have himself able to speak English.

We see again how ～ようになる and ～ようにする influence the decision and change the organization of the parts of the sentence. We expect the same things if we use ～ておく.

37. これまでに出来なかった問題をできるようにしておくことを願います。

We ask that you prepare yourself to be able to answer the problems that you haven't been able to up till now.

38. 休み時間になったら、うわさばなし 噂話 {が・を} できるようにしておいた。

normal We had that we could gossip once we were in free time.

39. 学校で使っている問題集の問題が出来るようにしておくこと。

Have it that you can do the problems in the problem set used at school.

40. お金の<sup>かんり</sup>管理をできるようにしておくことが、自分の生活を守る上でも大切になってくる。<sup>2</sup>

Being able to manage one's money before will become even more important than protecting one's way of life.

41. みだりに青年が<sup>うめたてち</sup>埋立地に<sup>ぼうし</sup>立ち入るのを防止することができるようしておくこと。

Have it that you can prevent youths from trespassing recklessly into the land reclamation site.

We see that ～することができる will never become ～することできる even when you add ～ておく. Aside from this, there is a lot of variation between が and を. Due to the independent nature of the verb 出来る, we can say that が出来る would still be more common and grammatically safer overall even with the addition of ～ておく.

If using ～ておく worked to get を used before 出来る, then this should work for verbs like 見える. The use of ～ようにする or an imperative phrase should also influence this.

42. 通学路の近くでは、どこからでも<sup>こうつうひょうしき</sup>交通標識 {が・を} 見えるようにしておきなさい。  
Please make sure that the traffic signs are visible from any direction near the school zone.

---

## 分かる

The use of ～を分かる is here to stay, though it has traditionally been incorrect. Again, the idea that it is English's fault is not plausible. What is certain is that this verb has come to mean 理解する and has taken on the same grammatical rules as it in colloquial/emphatic speech.

Can we, though, find a Japanese route to the emergence of ～を分かる through this discussion? Yes, think about ～を分かろうとする. It would be harder to find Japanese speakers who don't like this example because the volitional pattern ～（よ）うとする is added, which adds the highly transitive する and 'control' related grammar. Similar grammar, then, should also make を is easier to use or at most obligatory.

43. 俺の気持ち {を ○・が X} 分かってくれ！

Understand my feelings!

## 第168課: Idioms I: 気

There are tons of idioms with 気. There is no simple definition of 気. It can refer to one's spirit, mind, disposition, mood, intention, feeling, attention, interest, etc. It can also refer to the atmosphere or the essence of something. All of these have a common theme. Once you begin seeing expressions with it, this will become much clearer.

### The Idioms

The literal interpretations of idioms gives us an insight on how truly different Japanese words things in comparison to English. Don't let this, though, make you unable to understand them. Keep in mind that 気 is just a normal noun. There's nothing really different from it than words in English with lots of usages or those found in many set phrases.

Don't view this list as bunch of set phrases whose literal meanings are just bizarre. This is certainly not how the Japanese view them. In every language, there are idiomatic phrases that have deviated so far from the original meanings of the words that they are composed of that you have to treat them as separate items in one's vocabulary. But, for the most part, the Japanese really think of 気 expressions with the literal interpretations provided in the right column.

Also, idioms are not equal in idiomacy (level of being idiomatic). Some may be very similar to the English phrasing minus a word here and there. The Japanese itself in 気 phrases may be far more abstract than others. For instance, 気が重い is more straightforward than 気をそろえる. Keep all of this in mind as you look at this list and the example sentences that follow.

	Meaning	Literal Meaning
気を張る	To pay attention to	To stretch the mind
気を使う	To fuss about; attend to	To use the mind
気を回す	To be suspicious	To spin the mind
気をそろえる	To pull together	To line up one's feelings
気を通す	To have the sense to	To carry through the mind
気が付く	To notice	To attach to the mind (intrans.)
気を付ける	To be careful	To attach to the mind (trans.)
気になる	To be on one's mind	To become in mind
気に入る	To like/be fond of	To enter the mind

気が焦る	To be impatient	For the mind to be in a hurry
気が荒い	To be quarrelsome	For the mind to be violent
が進む	To feel like doing something	For the mind to advance
気が軽い	To be sociable	For the mind to be light
気が座る	To feel relieved/be at ease	For the mind to sit
気がそれる	To be distracted	For the mind to divert
が多い	To be fickle	To have many minds
気が大きい	To be generous	To have a big mind
気が腐る	To feel dispirited	For one's mind to rot
気に留める	To keep in mind	To keep in the mind
気前がいい	To be generous	To have good generosity
気が急ぐ	To be in a hurry/feel under pressure	For the mind to be hurried
気は心	It's the thought that counts	The mind's the heart
気が重い	To feel depressed	For the mind to be heavy
気が散る	To be distracted	For the mind to be scattered
気が乗らない	To not be in the mood	For the mind to not be riding
気を引く	To attract someone's affection	To draw in minds
気をもむ	To fret	To worry the mind

Despite that idiomatic phrases are typically stand-alone phrases that can be and are understood in isolation, it is helpful to see context with these phrases. Do not be confused with syntax as nothing out of the ordinary was shown. If you must, get familiar with the literal definitions to think of the phrases.

1. 彼は僕と**気の合う**友人です。

He is a congenial friend to me.

2. あいつに従う**気**はない。

I have no intentions to obey him.

3. 気を悪くしないで。

No hard feelings.

4. **あの子に気があるの？** (Casual)

normal

Do you have a fancy for her?

5a. もし俺の言うことを聞く気があんなら助けてやろう。(Really casual)

5b. もし俺の言う通りにするなら助けてやろう。

If he intends to listen what I'm going to say, I'll help him.

6. 今度の {催し・イベント} のこと (を) 考えると気が重くなっちゃうの。(A little feminine)

Whenever I think of the coming event, I get depressed.

7. {気が狂いそうな・頭がおかしい} やつじゃん。(Casual)

Isn't he a crazy guy?

8. 遊ぶ**気がしない**子供は存在するはずがない。(Somewhat old-fashioned)

There shouldn't exist children that don't feel like playing.

9. 鈴木さんは**気前のよい**寄贈者でいらっしゃいます。(Honorific)

Mr. Suzuki is a generous contributor.

10. 気は心。

It's the thought that counts.

11. 彼はいつも自分の思い通りじゃないと**気がすまない**嫌いがある。

He has the tendency to always want his way.

12. コンピューターがついてると**気が散って**ちっとも勉強できないんだ。(Casual)

I can't study at all when the computer is on.

## 第169課: Conjunctions

せっぞくし

Conjunctions 接続詞 connect sentences together in Japanese. They don't normally connect clauses, however. This is quite unlike English, which often doesn't like some conjunctions being used at the beginning of a sentence. Instead, Japanese does a good job distinguishing between conjunctions, which is the topic of this lesson, and conjunctive particles.

Some conjunctive phrases are made of multiple phrases. This makes things a bit more complicated, especially when things look very similar minus one thing. Also be aware that all of the conjunctions may not be expressed with either conjunctions or conjunctive particles and thus will not be mentioned in this lesson.

In this this lesson conjunctions are labeled with the following terms. This lesson does not aim to teach you all conjunctive phrases in Japanese, but you will definitely learn what they are, how they are used, and plenty to practice with.

normal

Function			Abbreviation
Parallelism	並行	へいこう	並
Alternation	代替	だいがえ	代
Addition	添加	てんか	添
Change	転換	てんかん	転
Concession	逆接	ぎゃくせつ	逆
Sequence	連続	れんぞく	連

## Single Word Conjunctions

転	さて	Now	添	加えて	Moreover
逆	しかし	However	逆	一方	On the other hand
添	しかも	Moreover	連	従って	Therefore
代	即ち	In other words	逆	ただし	Provided
添	そして	And	並	及び	And
転	そもそも	In the first place	添	なお	Still
添	且つ	Also	連	よって	Thus

### Usage Notes:

1. さて is used to change the topic of conversation. It may also be an interjection similar to "well" in English.
2. しかし is not used as frequently as the English equivalent "however". It is used, first and foremost, to contrast two different things.
3. When (その) 一方 (では) is used with 他方 (では) before it, in which case その may never precede it, the interpretation changes to "on the one hand". This extended pattern is not likely to be used in the spoken language.
4. Due to it looking like しかし, しかも is often misused by students. It is just like そのうえに.
5. そして shows that something additionally happens.

### Examples

- 1a. あるいは本当かもしれません。

normal



- 1b. 恐らく（それが）本当かもしれません。 (More natural)  
Perhaps that's true.
2. 明朝十時集合。ただし雨の場合は中止。  
A 10 o'clock meeting tomorrow, but cancellation in case of rain.
3. しかも、あられが降ってるんだよ。  
Besides, it's hailing!

**漢字 Note:** あられ may rarely be spelled as 霰

4. そりゃそもそもの始まりだった。  
That's all it was to begin with.
5. 命は天に在り。然らばただ時を待つのみ。 (Old-fashioned)  
Life is in heaven. So, we just wait for the time.
- 6a. よく学び且つよく遊ぶ。 (Not an imperative; Set phrase; old-fashioned)  
6b. よく学びよく遊べ。 (Imperative)  
Study well and play well.
7. お金は即ち幸福と考える。  
To think of money, in other words, happiness.
8. しかし、景気はまだ回復しない。  
However, the economy hasn't recovered.
9. {さて・さあ}、始めよう。  
Well, let's begin.
10. だったら、手伝おう。  
If that's the case, I'll help.
11. 但し雨の場合は延期。  
However, it will be postponed in the case of rain.
12. 彼女は歌人であり、かつ小説家であります。  
She is a tanka poet, and she is also a novelist.
13. あいつはそもそも殺すつもりはなかった。  
He didn't have an intention of killing in the first case.

14. 0対0の均衡を破る。  
To break a tie of 0-0.

**Word Note:** 対 is the equivalent of "versus".

15. 先ず日本へ行きました。そしていろいろなところへ行きました。  
First of all, I went to Japan, and I went to a lot of different places.

16. よって件の如し。(Set phrase; Formal)  
Therefore, it is as the aforementioned statement.

## Multiple Word Conjunctions

連	そのうえ	Besides	連	そのうち	Some day
代	または	Or	添	ところで	By the way
連	何故なら	Because	連	そればかりか	Besides
逆	だから	Because	連	さもないと	Otherwise
添	それで	And so	連	それから	Then
代	それとも	Or	連	それなら	If so
添	こうして	With this	添	そうして	With that
代	もしくは	Or	逆	それどころか	Rather
並	並びに	Both...and...	逆	それでも	Nevertheless
連	それ故	Therefore, thus	連	それにしても	Even so
連	故に	Accordingly	連	それにつけても	Anyway
逆	だが	But	連	それはさておき	By the way
連	それに	Moreover			

17. それゆえ、銃撃戦の死者は百人以上に上ります。  
Therefore, the casualties from the shoot-out will climb to over 100.

- 18a. 行く川の流<sup>ゆ</sup>れは絶えず溢<sup>あふ</sup>れ出している故にもとの水ではない。  
18b. 行く川の流<sup>ゆ</sup>れは絶えずして、しかももとの水にあらず。(Original Classical version)  
The flow of a passing river endlessly flows; hence, it is not the original water.

19. その代わり<sup>か</sup>に、本を買った。  
Instead, I bought a book.

20. ところでお仕事は？  
By the way, your job is?

21. それにつけても思い出すのは古き良き時代だ。  
Anyways, that reminds me of the good old days.

22. 新語<sup>しんご</sup>並びに<sup>なら</sup>外来語<sup>がいらいご</sup>に関する<sup>かん</sup>資料<sup>しりょう</sup>を調べる<sup>しら</sup>。  
To examine data about both neologisms and foreign expressions.

23. そういえば、久実さんはどうしてるんだろう？  
Now that I think of it, I wonder what Kumi is doing?

24. 日本語には同音異義語<sup>どうおんいぎご</sup>が多い。{故に・それゆえ・よって・そういうわけで・そのよう  
なわけで・従って・このため・そのため・だから・このことから}、漢字で書く。  
Japanese has a lot of homophones. Therefore, you write with Kanji.

**Historical Note:** The introduction of 漢字 caused Japanese to have a lot of homophones.

**Word Note:** From the single example above, there are a lot of possible conjunctions out there that relatively mean the same thing. However, what are their exact differences?

- 故に shows that due to the fact it's after, the following is as effect.
- それ故に shows that the stated matter is reason for the next case stated after it.
- よって states that the previous sentence as the reason or evidence.
- そういわけで・そのようなわけで = With that reason
- 従って = Therefore; so; consequently.
- このため・これゆえに = Points that as the goal or reason.
- そのため = このため. This is a rare occasion with これ are interchangeable それ.
- だから = So; because
- このことから = With this

Even in English, there are several interchangeable but slightly different phrases that can be used. The specifics and impromptu nature of speech at a given situation is the ultimate determining factor. Some of these are more formal or casual then the others. So, that has a lot to do with which is used.

25a. だから言わないことじゃない。

25b. だから言わんこっちゃない。 (Slang/very casual)

normal I told you so.

26. その結果、試験に受かった。  
Because of that, I passed the exam.
27. それはさておき、東京に引っ越すんだ。  
By the way, I'm moving to Tokyo.
28. それにしても {どれも・いずれも} 決して完璧じゃないね。  
Even so, nothing is perfect, you know?
29. しかしながら、予算がかかりすぎる。  
However, it is too much for the budget.
30. 我思う、故に我あり。  
I think; therefore, I am.
31. そればかりか動物も殺された。  
Besides that, even the animals were killed.
32. それどころか、もう20歳です。  
Rather, he's already twenty.
33. その結果試験に落ちた。  
And thus, I failed the exam.
34. さもないと警察を呼ぶぞ。  
If you don't, I'll call the police.
35. 度々インフルエンザに市民の半分もしくは全員かかって床につくこともある。  
Often, (the city) also has times where half or all of the citizens are down with influenza.
36. それなら、いつも学校に遅れるのはどういうわけですか。  
If that's the case, how is it that you're always late to school?

---

### それで、それに、それから、& そして

Many people confuse **それで** and **それに**. **それで** shows that what was stated before is the reason or cause for what follows while **それに** shows another additional fact or situation. Also, if the previous facts were positive in nature, so should the additional information. This is the same for negative things too. **そこで** is also similar to **それで**, but it is specifically used to when you know in detail the reason for what follows. The previous context is very

concrete, and this is not always the case with それで. そこで can also be used to mean さて, and this is something それで never means.

Other related conjunctions include それから and そして. The former is used to mean "after that/then" showing chronological order of events. The latter is the generic "and".

37. 韓国語は面白いです。それに、役に立ちます。

Korean is interesting. Moreover, it's beneficial.

38. 「ロッテリアは値段も安いし、おいしいんです」「それで人が多いんですね」

"Lotteria is cheap and delicious" "So, that's why it's crowded."

39. きのう風邪を引きました。それで、今日学校を休んだんです。

I caught a cold yesterday. So, I stayed away from school today.

40. 昨日は授業のあと公園へ行きました。それから、三時間ぐらい友達と話をしました。

Yesterday, I went to the park after class. Then, I talked for about three hours with friends.

41. 私はおとし五月に卒業しましたが、それからずっと仕事を探しています。

I graduated in May two years ago, but I've been searching for a job ever since.

42. 「このごろどうですか。忙しいですか」「宿題がたくさんありますし、それに、暇な時間はほとんどありません」

"How have you been lately? Are you busy?" "I have a lot of homework, and on top of that, I barely have any free time".

43. 「あなたのアパートは、どんなアパートですか」「私のアパートはきれいなところです、それに家賃が安いので、住みやすいです」

"What kind of apartment do you have?" "My apartment is a pretty place, and since the rent is cheap, it's easy to live there".

**Phrase Note:** When using それに, all the parts of the sentence must either have positive or negative connotations but never both!

44. 「あなたの住んでいる町はどんな町ですか」「人口が少なく美しい町です。それに、

雰囲気の良いところです」

"What kind of town is the town that you live in?" "It's a small, beautiful town. Moreover, it is a local town with a good atmosphere".

**Word Note:** 人 can replace 人口 above, but it is not the best choice of the two.

45. 「日本語の勉強はどうですか」「宿題が簡単ですし、それに日本人と毎日会話しております」

“How are your Japanese studies?” “My homework is easy, and I talk to Japanese people every day”.

### **読み物: アイヌ語を守ろう!**

This is an example of a small speech in Japanese. Read through the text and answer the questions that follow. Conjunctions will be in bold. No English will be given. You are free to use previous lessons and dictionary resources to understand the text.

皆様、こんにちは。〇〇と申します。今日は、「アイヌ語を守ろう」というテーマについて、発表させていただきます。

私は大学で言語学を専攻しており、特に東アジアの言語学について研究しております。その中で、日本の文化の一部であるアイヌ語が消滅の危機にあるということを知りました。言語学を専攻している私にとって、言語の消滅は無視することの出来ない問題です。また、言語は人間のごとく生きているというのが私の考えです。アイヌ語の命が絶たれたならば、いわば、使われなくなってしまうのなら、もう二度とアイヌ語が復活できなくなってしまうと考え、今回の発表のテーマに至りました。

**まず**、簡単にアイヌ語について説明させていただきます。アイヌ語とは、日本の北海道などで、話されている少数言語です。多くのアイヌ人は、現代では、両親からアイヌ語を教わっていません。アイヌ語の教室が開設されていても、ほとんどの人が学ぼうとしない、というのが現状です。このように、消滅の危機にあるアイヌ語ですが、私はアイヌ語を保たなければならないと思います。

**では**、どうしてアイヌ語を保つ必要があるのでしょうか。それはアイヌ語の独自性にあります。アイヌ人の歴史や経験が記号化されたものがアイヌ語です。**例えば**、「神」という日本語はアイヌ語の「カムイ」から出来ました。これは、大昔に、神道の概念がなかった日本語が根本的な神道の概念を持つアイヌ語の影響を受けたことに由来します。**他にも**、「ラッコ」や「トナカイ」、「くま」などアイヌ語に影響を受けた日本語が少なからず存在します。このように、アイヌ語の独自性が日本の文化に含まれていることは明らかなのです。アイヌ語も日本語と同じく尊重されるべきではないでしょうか？

**現在**、アイヌ語のネイティブスピーカーのほとんどが高齢者になってしまっているので、会

normal

話を保存するといった方法でアイヌ語を守ろうとしている人がいるそうです。これらのテープを使って、未来の熱心な生徒のために勉強教材を作ることができるようなればいいと思います。アイヌ語が消滅する可能性は依然として高いものの、こういった効果的な活動のため、近いうちに消滅してしまう可能性も、少しずつですが、減ってきているようです。これから多くの日本人がアイヌ語の尊さに気づき、アイヌ語が継承されていくことを願います。

これで私の発表を終わります。ご静聴どうもありがとうございました。何かご質問などありますでしょうか？

Questions:

1. What is the theme of this speech?
2. Why is Ainu important to protect according to this person?
3. What are some examples of Ainu influence in Japanese?
4. What has become of the Ainu speaking population?
5. What is being doing to protect Ainu?
6. What is the presenter majoring in?
7. What is language linked to?
8. Is it still likely Ainu will die out?

## 第170課: Negative Prefixes: 未, 無, 非, 否, & 不

Prefixes are cumbersome in Japanese as they are in English. In English when we think of negative prefixes, we think of un-, non-, a-, in-, de-, etc. If distinguishing between all these is difficult, then you might be relieved to know that Japanese isn't as complex in this regard. Although there is some truth in having to learn when they're used on a case-by-case basis, differentiating between 未, 無, 非, 否, and 不 is not all that troublesome.


Although there are no rules that determine which of these prefixes are to be used, corresponding these endings with the following Japanese and English keywords will help you tremendously in understanding how they're used.

未	まだ...ない	Incompletion
無	ない・存在しない	Absence
非	しない・ではない	Unjustifiability
否	同意しない	Noncompliance
不	ではない	Simple Negation

Another thing to keep in mind about these prefixes is that although they are being referred to as prefixes, it is not a 100% guarantee that what they attach to can be used in isolation as independent words. This is because they are being viewed as prefixes based on how they are used from a Chinese language perspective. For instance, anxiety in Japanese is 不安. 安, however, is not used as the antonym of 不安. Instead, the antonym of 不安 is 安心. These are simply quirks that you will need to become accustomed to as you learn words with these prefixes.

## 未: Incompletion

Simply put, this prefix indicates incompletion. Meaning, something isn't quite so yet, but it will (most likely) be so in the future.

- みじゆく 未熟なだけに、ひがい かえって被害を起こす可能性が高いのです。  
Precisely because (X) is inexperienced, the possibility of him causing damage is all the more high.
- みこうかい きのう、未公開の映画をみ観ました。  
I watched an unreleased movie yesterday.
- みかいけつ 未解決の事件をじけん纏めまとました。  
I have compiled unresolved cases.
- むすこ 息子がみせいねんいんしゅ未成年飲酒をしたということでけいさつ警察につ連れていかれました。  
My son was taken by police for underage drinking.
- みぼうじん もしも未亡人になったら、く暮らし方はかた今までと違うのか。  
If you were to become a widow, how would the way you live differ from what it is now?
- みけいけんしゃ 未経験者ばかりのオフィスで働いています。
- だれ 人間は誰もがみかんせい未完成だ。  
All people are incomplete.
- みかくにんひこうぶつ もしかしたら未確認飛行物体を見たかもしれない。  
I may have possibly seen an unidentified flying object.
- たいけんばん 体験版を通じて、つう たくさんの未発表のみはっぴょうポケモンがリークされてしまった。  
 any unrevealed Pokemon were accidentally leaked through the demo version.



10. 未開発市場に乗り出す。  
To set out in undeveloped markets.
11. 10歳未満の子供を対象としています。  
We are targeting children under ten.
12. わたしは未婚ですが、子供が欲しいです。  
I'm unmarried, but I want a child.

## 無: Absence

Attaches to things that are nouns (in Chinese and as an effect can be viewed as nouns in Japanese). It may result in an adjective or adverb on a case-by-case basis, though. This prefix indicates total lack. It typically only attaches to Sino-Japanese words. When dealing with non-Sino-Japanese words, ~なし is preferred (ex. 底なし = bottomless).

13. 無人島に住みたいと思っています。  
I want to live on an uninhabited island.
14. 会員登録は無料ですか。  
Is membership registration free?
15. 一人で泣いたって無意味だよ。  
It's meaningless to cry by yourself.
16. 可能性は皆無に等しい。  
The likelihood is near nothing.
17. 夜中に無数の星々を眺める。  
To gaze at the endless stars in the middle of the night.
18. 無論、その通りです。  
Of course, that's exactly the case.
19. 無視されたくないです。  
I don't like being ignored.
20. ジンバブエは無法地帯のソマリアよりも治安が悪いと聞いています。  
I'm hearing that public order in Zimbabwe is worse than lawless Somalia.

21. 無職の男性が逮捕されました。  
An unemployed male was arrested.
22. 彼女は無表情な顔をして黙っていた。  
Her face was expressionless as she stayed quiet.
23. 無意識に歯を食いしばる癖を治したい。  
I want to fix my habit of unconsciously grinding my teeth.
24. 無関心な相手に対しては怒りを感じません。  
I don't feel anger towards those who are uninterested.

### In 当て字

Although not an example of the prefix, you will also see the character 無 found in the 熟字訓 reading of the native word for “fig,” which is イチジク. This is because figs, despite having many stamen and pistils, they are not visible from the outside, thus the spelling 無花果.

## 非: Unjustifiability

This prefix indicates that something is not belonging to a certain state of being. It is used to show unjustifiability. Meaning, whatever it is referring to, there is a state in which it ought to be but this is the negation of it being so. More emotion, as an effect, can be seen in many examples of it.

不合理: Simple negation of something being rational.

非合理: Emotional appeal to something being irrational/illogical.

It usually attaches to nouns but may result in adjectives depending on the phrase. It can attach to Sino-Japanese, native, and foreign words.

25. 非常識な妻に息子を育てさせるのは絶対に嫌です。  
I absolutely don't want to let my senseless wife raise our son.
26. 非割り込み型優先度順サービス  
Non-preemptive priority service
27. 非アフリカ系の現代人が、DNAの1~4%をネアンデルタール人から受け継いでいる。  
Non-African descent modern humans inherit 1~4% of their DNA from Neanderthals.

28. 現実の世界から非現実の世界に入ってしまった。  
To end up entering an unreal world from the real world.
29. 非科学的な発言が大嫌いだ。  
I hate nonscientific remarks.
30. このページは非表示になっています。  
This page does not display.
31. これからは非婚の男性が増えるでしょう。  
Men who aren't married (and don't wish to) will increase from now on.
32. 平日は非常勤職員として働いています。  
On week days I work as a part-time worker.
33. 常温で固体の非金属元素といえば、ケイ素などあります。  
In speaking of non-metal elements that are solid at room temperature, there is silicon.

## 否: Noncompliance

This prefix is not near as common as any of the previous ones, but when it is used, it indicates a meaning of noncompliance.

34. その事実を否定することはできないし、否定しても意味がない。  
You can't even deny the truth, and even if you were to, there would be no point.
35. 議会で否決されたらどうなるのか。  
What happens if it's rejected by the assembly?
36. 被告は容疑を否認しています。  
The defendant is denying the allegation.

## 不: Simple Negation

This prefix attaches to adjectives and verbs to show simple negation. It may not be absolute negation, though. For instance, it may indicate stagnation in some sense. It typically follows nouns to negate an action, and it typically follows 形容動詞 to negate a state.

37. 人は、気分がいいときは健康な食べ物を、ストレスを感じているときは不健康な食べ物

けいこう  
を選ぶ傾向がある。

People have the tendency of choosing healthy foods when they feel good and unhealthy foods when they're under stress.

さきほど ふ び  
38. 先程お送りしたメールに不備がありました。

There was a fault in the e-mail that I had just sent you.

あくさい ふ さ く  
39. 悪妻は百年の不作。

A bad wife leads to 100 years of failure.

ふきよう さいよう ひか  
40. 今年は不況のため採用を控えます。

We are holding off on hiring this year due to recession.

ろうがん  
41. 老眼は不便だね。

Farsightedness due to old age is inconvenient, you know.

ゆく え ふ め い  
42. 海外で行方不明になる。

To go missing overseas.

### 不 + Native Words

不 has been around long enough to follow a select number of native words.

ふ ゆ と ど  
43. 不行き届きの点は許してください。

Please forgive the carelessness.

て う ふ ぞ ろ め ん  
44. 手打ちで不揃いの麺が多い。

There are many uneven noodles made by hand.

ふ ま じ め し ゅ っ せ  
45. なぜ不真面目な人ほど、出世するのか。

Why is it that the less serious someone is the more he advances in life?

### 不・無（ぶ） : Ill-representation

This is yet another prefix which can be written as either 不 or 無 with no true rules as to when you should use which aside from standard convention on a case-by-case basis. Most examples of this involve 形容動詞 as equivalents of the English prefixes “mis-” and “ill-.”

て さ き ふ き よ う  
46. 手先が不器用すぎる。

normal

I'm too clumsy with my hands.

ぶあいそう

47. 無愛想な顔をしていると、相手も無愛想になる。

Whenever you have a blunt look on your face, your opponent will also become blunt.

ぶさいく

48. 顔が不細工な人と付き合えますか。

Are you capable of dating someone with an ugly face?

## 第171課: Counters VII: Prefixes/Suffixes with Counters: 何～, 幾～, 数～, ～数, 半～, ～半, ～余, & ～余り

In this lesson, rather than learn about new counters, we'll study several important appendages added to counters themselves. You've already seen them at play at least once before, so this lesson should serve as a very informative yet well deserved break from learning more counters.

### Prefixes/Suffixes Covered

1. *Nan-* 何～
2. *Iku-* 幾～
3. *Sū-* 数～
4. *-sū* ～数
5. *Han-* 半～
6. *-han* ～半
7. *-yo-* 余
8. *-amari* 余り

**Curriculum Note:** This lesson will be moved earlier into the curriculum in the next lesson reordering.

## How many...

### *Nan-* 何～

Aside from certain temporal phrases where it may also function as “what...” *nan-* 何 is typically used with counters to express “how...” as in quantity. As a recap of this, consider the following examples.

きにゅうも

いちにち

なんけん

1. 記入漏れは、一日（に）何件ありますか。

*Kinyūmore wa, ichinichi (ni) nanken arimasu ka?*

normal

How many omissions are there a day?

だいあん なんぜん

2. 代案は何千もある。

*Daian wa nanzen mo aru.*

There are thousands of alternate plans.

きよねん ねんがじょう なんつうおく

3. 去年は年賀状を何通送りましたか。

*Kyonen wa nengajō wo nantsū okurimashita ka?*

How many New Year's cards did you send last year?

たまご いちにち なんこ た し

4. 卵は一日（に）何個まで食べてよいのか知っていますか。

*Tamago wa ichinichi (ni) nanko made tabete yoi no ka shitte imasu ka?*

Do you know how many eggs are okay to eat a day?

ぎんこうこうざばんごう なんけた

5. 銀行口座番号は何桁でしょうか。

*Ginkō kōza bangō wa nanketa deshō ka?*

How many digits are in a bank account number?

か だま さいこう なんとまちゅうもん

6. ラーメンの替え玉は最高で何玉注文したことがありますか。

*Rāmen no kaedama wa saikō de nantama chūmon shita koto ga arimasu ka?*

How many second servings of ramen have you ordered at the most?

なんだい くるま こうさてん と

7. 何台かの車が交差点で止まっている。

*Nandaika no kuruma ga kōsaten de tomatte iru.*

Several cars are stopped at the intersection.

エール いちまい なんき

8. ピザハットのLサイズのピザ1枚は何切れでしょうか。

*Pizahatto no ēru saizu no piza ichimai wa nankire deshō ka?*

How many slices is a single large-sized pizza from Pizza Hut?

なんとう

9. ヤギは何頭飼っているんですか。

*Yagi wa nantō katte iru n desu ka?*

How many goats are you raising?

**Spelling Note:** *Yagi* is seldom spelled as 山羊.

いちにち さいこう なんぼある

なんじかん ある

10. 1日に最高で何歩歩きましたか。そして、何時間くらい歩きましたか。

*Ichinichi ni saikō de nampo arukimashita ka? Soshite, nanjikan kurai arukimashita ka?*

How many steps did you walk a day at most? Also, about how many hours did you walk?

The native equivalent of *nan-* 何 is *iku-* 幾. In Modern Japanese, it is largely limited to the written language and song lyrics. Its use is also limited to only a handful of phrases. As such, you must learn each one on an individual basis.

ただ みち あゆ もの いくにん  
11. 正しい道を歩んでいる者は幾人かいる。  
*Tadashii michi wo ayunde iru mono wa ikuninka iru.*  
There are few who are walking down the right path.

いくせん よる こ さが つづ  
12. 幾千の夜を越えて探し続けた。  
*Ikusen no yoru wo koete sagashitsuzuketa.*  
I continued to search past thousands of nights.

かのじょ ほしぞら み あ いくばん いくばん す  
13. 彼女は星空を見上げて幾晩も幾晩も過ごした。  
*Kanojo wa hoshizora wo miagete ikuban mo ikuban mo sugoshita.*  
She spent evening after evening looking up at the starry sky.

いくにち たたか つづ  
14. 幾日も戦い続けた。  
*Ikunichi mo tatakaitsuzuketa.*  
I continued to fight for days.

いくえ かさ くも なが  
15. 幾重にも重なる雲を眺めていた。  
*Ikue ni mo kasanaru kumo wo nagamete ita.*  
I was gazing up at multiple-layered clouds.

## 数～ & ～数

The prefix *sū-* 数～ attaches to all sorts of counters to indicate “several...” The number implied by this prefix is based largely on context and personal intuition. It generally refers to at least 2-10.

さくじょ すうふん  
16. キャッシュ削除に数分かかりました。  
*Kyasshu sakujo ni sūfun kakarimashita.*  
it took several minutes to delete the cache.

ディーバイディー すうじゅうまいか  
17. DVD を数十枚買いました。  
*Diibuidii wo sūmai kaimashita.*  
I bought several DVDs.

つき すうひゃくこう しょうひん  
18. 月に数百個売れている商品もあります。  
*Tsuki ni sūhyakko urete iru shōhin mo arimasu.*  
We also have products that sell several hundred a month.

なま すうはいの  
19. 生ビールを数杯飲みました。  
*Namabiiru wo sūhai nomimashita.*  
I drank several glasses of draught beer.

すうまんにん しみん どうろ う つ  
20. 数万人の市民が道路を埋め尽くした。  
*Sūman'nin no shimin ga dōro wo umetsukushita.*  
Several tens of thousands of citizens filled up the road.

すうむね じゅうたく しゃめん すべ お  
21. 数棟の住宅が斜面を滑り落ちかけている。  
*Sūmune no jūtaku ga shamen wo suberiochikakete iru.*  
Several residences are slipping off the slope.

さわ あふ ふくすう じゅうたく ゆかした しんすい  
22. 沢が溢れて複数の住宅が床下まで浸水している。  
*Sawa ga afurete fukusū no jūtaku ga yukashita made shinsui shite iru.*  
The marsh overflowed and several residences are now inundated up beneath the floor.

われわれ ふくすうにん ひと かいはず すす  
23. 我々は複数人で1つのシステムの開発を進めています。  
*Wareware wa fukusūnin de hitotsu no shisutemu no kaihatsu wo susumete imasu.*  
We are furthering the development of one system with several people.

ふくすうめい そうしん さい つうち ふくすうにんぶんほど  
24. 複数名にメールを送信した際、通知メールは複数人分届きます。  
*Fukusūmei ni mēru wo sōshin shita sai, tsūchi mēru wa fukusūnin-bun todokimasu.*  
When you send an e-mail to several people, you will receive that amount of people's worth of notification e-mails.

すうじつ あつ  
25. ここ数日とても暑いのです。  
*Koko sūjitsu totemo atsui desu.*  
These past few days have been really hot.

**Reading Note:** Note that 数日 is read as “sūjitsu” rather than “sūnichi.”

## ～数

When -sū 数 is attached after a counter, it expresses “number of...” Do not confuse this with the prefix sū- 数～ from above. This suffix can essentially be used with any counter.

たてもの かいすう ひょうげん い かた いっかい にかい  
26. 建物の階数を表現する言い方で、アメリカでは1階を「first floor」、2階を「second floor」と言いますが、イギリスでは1階を「ground floor」、2階を「first floor」と言います。

Toten normal *tate mono no kaisū wo hyōgen suru iikata de, Amerika de wa ikkai wo “first floor,” nikai wo*



“second floor” to *iimasu ga, Igirisu de wa ikkai wo* “ground floor,” *nikai wo* “first floor” to *iimasu*.

For phrases that express number of floors in a building, in America “ikkai” is called the “first floor” and “nikai” is called the “second floor,” but in England “ikkai” is called the “ground floor” and “nikai” is called the “first floor.”

いちにち こうつうじこ お けんすう ぜんこく なんけん  
27. 1日で交通事故が起こる件数は、全国で何件ぐらいあるんですか。  
*Ichinichi de kōtsū jiko ga okoru kensū wa, zenkoku de nanken gurai aru n desu ka?*  
About how many traffic accident cases are there nationwide a day?

ちてん もくてきち ほすう かぞ  
28. スタート地点から目的地までの歩数を数えました。  
*Sutāto chiten kara mokutekichi made no hosū wo kazoemashita.*  
I counted the number of steps from my starting point to my destination.

なんけた  
29. マイナンバーは何桁になるんですか。  
*Mainambā wa nanketa ni naru n desu ka?*  
How many digits will “my number” be?

**Culture Note:** *Mainambā* マイナンバー, also known as *kojin bangō* 個人番号 (individual number), is a 12-digit ID number issued to all citizens and (foreign) residents of Japan for taxation purposes.

ちゅうかん てんすう わる  
30. 中間テストの点数が悪かった。  
*Chūkan tesuto no tensū ga warukatta.*  
My mid-term test score was bad.

のこ こすう き  
31. ボールの残り個数をあまり気にしないでいいですよ。  
*Bōru no nokori kosū wo amari ki ni shinakute ii desu yo.*  
You don't need to worry so much about how many remaining balls you have.

しょうかき たいようねんすう かくにん くだ  
32. 消火器の耐用年数を確認して下さい。  
*Shōkaki no taiyō nensū wo kakunin shite kudasai.*  
Please verify the life of the fire extinguishers.

にほん ぶすう ひゃくまんぶ とっぱ  
33. 日本での部数が100万部を突破した。  
*Nihon de no busū ga hyakumambu wo toppa shita.*  
The number of copies in Japan has broken through a million.

ほんすう じょじょ へ ほうほう きんえん せいこう ひと  
34. タバコの本数を徐々に減らしていく方法で禁煙に成功した人はいる。  
*Tabako no honsū wo jojo ni herashite iku hōhō de kin'en ni seikō shita hito wa iru.*  
There are people who have successfully quit smoking by using the method of gradually decreased the number of cigarettes they have.

さいきん しんせつじゅうたく こうすう ふ  
35. 最近、新設住宅の戸数が増えている。  
*Saikin, shinsetsu jūtaku no kosū ga fuete iru.*  
Recently, the number of new residences has been increasing.

いちばんかくすう おお かんじ なに  
36. 一番画数の多い漢字は何ですか。  
*Ichiban kakusū no ōi kanji wa nan desu ka?*  
What Kanji has the most number of strokes?

しへい まいすう かくにん  
37. 紙幣の枚数を確認してください。  
*Shihei no maisū wo kakunin shite kudasai.*  
Please verify the number of bills.

どうすう まいとしへ  
38. ダチョウの頭数は毎年減っています。  
*Dachō no tōsū wa maitoshi hette imasu.*  
The number of ostriches decreases every year.

Spelling Note: *Dachō* may seldom be spelled as 駝鳥.

ぼく あたまかず い  
39. 僕を頭数に入れないで。  
*Boku wo atamakazu ni irenaide.*  
Don't add me in the headcount.

**Sentence Note:** Though not related necessary to the suffix *-sū* 数, it is important to know that 頭数 has two different meanings and readings for each respectively as is demonstrated in Exs. 38 and 39.

Interestingly enough, when paired with the counter *-nin* 人, ～数 undergoes a sound change and becomes either *-zu* or *-zū*. Either reading is fine in the phrases 人数 creates, as is demonstrated below.

にんずう そろ  
40. なんとか人数を揃えました。  
*Nantoka ninzū wo soroemashita.*  
We somehow managed to gather many people.

たにんずう りょう さいてき  
41. 多人数で利用するには最適！  
*Taninzū de riyō suru ni wa saiteki!*  
It's most suitable for use with a large number of people!

おおにんずう い  
42. 大人数でポケモンをゲットしに行きました。  
*Ōninzū de pokemon wo getto shi ni ikimashita.*  
I went to catch Pokemon with a lot of people.

43. 小人数でレイドボスを倒すコツを覚えました。  
*Koninzū de reido bosu wo taosu kotsu wo oboemashita.*  
I learned the tricks to taking down a raid boss with a small amount of people.

## 半～ & ～半

The prefix *han-* 半 indicates “half” of something and is limited to counters that measure some sort of increment, whether it be a period of time or quantity of something. It is important to note, however, that it does have one peculiar restriction. This restriction is on how to say “half a week.” You would think *hanshū* 半週 would be used. However, this is not the case for most speakers. Instead, phrases like *mikka* 三日 (three days) or *yokka* 四日 (four days) would be used instead.

44. 半分に切ってください。  
*Hambun ni kitte kudasai.*  
Please cut it in half.

45. さて、半ヶ月ぶりの更新です！  
*Sate, hankagetsu-buri no kōshin desu!*  
Alright now, this will be a half-month belated update!

46. ドーナッツを半ダース買いました。  
*Dōnatsu wo handāsu kaimashita.*  
I bought half a dozen of donuts.

47. 少人数の職場に入って半年未満の者です。  
*Shōninzū no shokuba ni haitte hantoshi miman no mono desu.*  
I am someone who entered a small work-place and have been there for under half a year.

48. 今年1月末までにおよそ半数の 454 施設から回答を得ました。  
*Kotoshi ichigatsu-matsu made ni oyoso hansū no yonhyakugojūyon shisetsu kara kaitō wo emashita.*  
Before the end of January of this year, we had received responses from approximately half of the 454 facilities.

---

## ～半

The suffix *-han* 半 is added to time phrases to indicate “and a half.”

49. 私 は今日から一週間半断食を行います。

normal

*Watashi wa kyō kara issshūkan-han danjiki wo okonaimasu.*  
I will start a week and a half long fast today.

わたし てんきん し いちねん かん はんす  
50. 私 は転勤でバンクーバー市で一年（間）半過ごしました。  
*Watashi wa tenkin de Bankūbā-shi de ichinen(kan)-han sugoshimashita.*  
I spent a year and a half in Vancouver due to a job transfer.

## ～余 & ～余り

Yo- 余 goes in between a number and counter to mean “more than.” Technically, it is a suffix which attaches to numbers which is then followed by a counter. This phrase is used largely in the written language. In the spoken language, *-amari* 余り is used instead, which is a suffix that follows counter phrases.

そうぎょうひやくよねん  
51. 創業100余年！  
*Sōgyō hyaku-yo-nen!*  
Over 100 years since [its/our] establishing!

しちじゅうよねんかん せんそう  
52. この 70 余年間、戦争はありませんでした。  
*Kono shichijū-yo-nenkan, sensō wa arimasen deshita.*  
There has not been any war over these past seventy-odd years.

へいしごまんよにん  
53. 兵士五万余人がいた。  
*Heishi goman-yo-nin ga ita.*  
There were over fifty thousand soldiers.

よんじゅうまんにんあま かんせん  
54. 40 万人余りが感染している。  
*Yoman'nin-amari ga kansen shite iru.*  
Over four hundred thousand people are infected.

55. 彼は6ヶ月余りの戦闘の末に戦死した。  
*Kare wa rokkagetsu-amari no sentō no sue ni senshi shita.*  
He died in battle at the end of over six months of combat.

## 第172課: Good At & Bad At

These phrases are not as easy as they are in English. Pay attention to part of speech and when you use these phrases.

### Good At

The expression "good at" is typically expressed by one of three phrases. These phrases are

normal

not quite the same. First, look at the chart below.

上手い・巧い	うまい	Good at	Shows someone's good abilities.
得意	とくい (な)	Good at	Talks about one's or someone's forte.
上手	じょうず (な)	Good at	Speaks of other people's abilities.

**Kanji Note:** うまい is typically spelled in ひらがな.

Both 上手 and 得意 mean that someone is good at some activity; however, 上手 is objective, and 得意 is subjective. 上手 is used to indicate that someone is skillful based on other people's opinions. 得意, though, indicates that the person in question thinks oneself is good. It may also, however, show specifically someone's strong point. For 上手 to be used for oneself, something has to be done to get rid of the haughtiness. Or, if you want to sound like that, go right ahead.

So, 得意 can be translated as "forte". So, for speaking of one's own skills, use 得意. You should also not use うまい in reference to yourself. It is also important to note that うまい often means "delicious", but it should be obvious in context whether it is referring to someone's ability or something's taste.

Lastly, before we move on to the example sentences, it is important to remember that these phrases are all adjectives, 形容動詞 to be exact.

---

### Examples

- 彼は母に甘えるのが上手だね  
He's good at sucking up to his mother, isn't he?
- 私は水泳が得意だ。  
I am good at swimming.
- 私はビデオゲームが得意です。  
I am good at video games.
- 「日本語の先生は日本料理が上手ですか」「先生は料理が上手かどうか分かりません」  
"Is your Japanese teacher good at (making) Japanese food?" "I don't know whether my teacher is good at cooking or not?"
- ジェニファーさん、英語がお上手ですね。  
You really are good at speaking English, aren't you Jennifer!

6. 彼女は水泳が得意です。  
She is quite strong at swimming.

7. 彼女は水泳が上手です。  
She is good at swimming.

**Contrast Note:** If you are in a swimming match and want to know about how good your rivals are, being told sentence #6 may make you a little worried as it sounds like she is actually formidable.

8. 私は上手だと思います。  
I think that I'm good at it.

**Nuance Note:** This sentence would be in a response in a dialogue where others are making comments about ability, so it wouldn't be out of place. What follows is a good complement to leveling the haughtiness that would otherwise accompany 上手.

**Cultural Note:** In response to being told you're good at something, you should respond by saying "いいえ、まだまだです".

**Honorific Note:** The お attached to 上手 is being used here for honorific speech, but it is most likely to be used in this situation by a female speaker.

## Bad At

As you can imagine, the phrases for "bad at" should be very similar to the ones for "good at". If you thought this, you would be right. Just like before, these phrases are 形容動詞.

下手	へた (な)	Awful at	Speaks badly of one's or someone's abilities.
苦手	にがて (な)	Bad at	Shows one's or someone's bad abilities.
不得意	ふとくい (な)	Not one's forte	Refers politely about other people's bad abilities.
不味い・拙い	まずい	Unskilled	Speaks harshly of skill and not a nice word.
拙い	つたない	Poor at	Unskillful and awkward and not a nice word.

There are no reference restrictions as there are for the "good at" phrases, but the nuances are different as is noted in the third column. It is to note that 苦手 more so implies that doing something brings on a bitter experience, which may not necessarily imply a truly normal ability. However, sometimes this is clearly not the case, but it's not as harsh in nature as

下手.

まずい is most often used in reference to poor flavor, which ultimately reflects on the cooker's ability of cooking. まずい is normally written in かな.

---

### Examples

9. 彼女は運転うんてんが下手だ。  
She is bad at driving.

10. 彼の奥さんおくはやりくりがちょっと苦手ですね。  
His wife is a little bad at managing, isn't she?

11. 彼女は物理ぶつりが不得意です。  
She is not good at physics.

12. 私は水泳すいえいが下手だ。  
I am awful at swimming.

13. 彼は数学が苦手だ。  
He is bad at math.

14. 字が拙いね。  
Your handwriting is bad.

15. うわ、すんごくまずかったよ。(Casual)  
Oh, that was just awful.

16. 韓国語のEメールに返事を書くのは苦手です。  
I am bad at writing a reply in E-mail in Korean.

## 第173課: Like & Love

There are many words in Japanese for liking and loving people and things. In this lesson, you will learn about all sorts of these phrases. It is really important that you pay attention to detail but also realize that such a topic can never be described in absolutes in any language. Feeling is something with no bounds or standards.

### Like/Love

~好きだ

normal

Like, even in English, is a word with varying potency. You can tell a girl “I like you”, but you can also say “I like pizza” or “I like Japanese food”. The same goes for Japanese.

～が好きだ is the Japanese equivalent of “to like”, and as will be explained later in more detail, it is an adjectival phrase, not verbal. This word may show that one is pleased with something and have inclination for. This inclination can also be emotional attachment and love.

1. サッちゃん、好きだよ。

Satchan, I like you.

2. 夏よりも春が好きだ。

I like spring better than summer.

3. 現代音楽はあまり好きじゃない。

I don't like modern music much.

4. あいつはほんと酒（飲むの）好きだよね。（くだけた話し方）

That guy really does like drinking.

5. 毎朝走るのが好きです。

I like to run every morning.

6. あに兄は歌えなくても歌うのが好きです。

Even though my older brother can't sing, he likes to sing.

7. マンガが好きじゃない。

I don't like manga.

Just like the English phrase, 好きだ can have negative connotations. For instance, getting on to one's obsession over something can be taken as a negative comment.

8. 今夜もパッドタイ？マジで好きだねえ。

Pad Thai again, tonight? You really like it, don't you?

9. あんた、社長が好きなんでしょう。(Familiar)

That's cause you like the prez, don't you?

**Part of Speech Note:** The Japanese phrase 好き is a 形容動詞. That means you should treat it like an adjective, this is despite that in English the phrase is treated as a verb. The phrase, though, does come from a verb. The verb form 好く is limited to the passive form, and outside of this, other instances are typically set phrases.

normal **Phrases Note:** Below are some common set phrases utilizing different forms of 好く.



10. 賭<sup>か</sup>け事<sup>ごと</sup>は {すかない・すかん} 。  
I can't stand gambling.

11. あいつは虫がすかない。  
I especially hate that guy.

12. 好いたらしい人だと思う。  
I think that person is delightful.

**Particle Note:** Particle usage is also something to keep in mind. When you say that you like something, this is generally new information that you are trying to tell someone. So, because this is the case and you are using an adjectival expression, you should say Xが好きだ. However, due to influence from Western languages, primarily English, ～を好きだ has become acceptable for many younger speakers (those ~35 and under).

13. あたしを好きなの？ (Feminine)  
Do you like me?

14. ブスを好きになる方法を教えて。  
Teach me how to like an ugly person.

15. あんたの醜い犬めを好きになるくらいに (失礼!)  
To the point of liking your ugly dog

There is a tendency for を to be more accepted the longer the sentence is. It is wrong to say that this is “bad Japanese”. This is just an instance of the language evolving. However, when you are speaking politely, you shouldn't use something casual. In casual yet polite situations, certain things like this may appear, but this is something you should play by ear.

---

## 大好き

大好き is really liking something/someone a lot. Now, whether it has love connotations or not is solely based on context. For instance, when you say, あの歌手、大好き！, you aren't necessarily saying you love that singer. It is clear, though, you really like the singer. Even still, this is ambiguous. Whether you like the singer's music, the singer as an individual, or emotionally love the singer would all be based on context.

16. 大好きな君へ (Something you'd see in a song; romantic)  
~To you, my love

17. 韓国料理が大好き！  
I love Korean food！

normal

18. 母は友だちとしゃべることが大好きだ。  
My mom loves to chat with her friends.

19. 私は泳ぐのが大好きです。  
I love to swim.

---

## 好む

この  
好む is like “to fond/love”. It comes from the idea of choosing something out of a number of things because it fits with one’s disposition. So, there is a sense of interest involved that one holds, and describes something you may grow a fond, taste, liking to.

20. 明るい提灯の光を好んで、虫が集まる。  
Bugs love the bright light of paper lanterns and swarm (around them).

21. 人は平和を好むのが当たり前のことだ。  
People preferring/loving peace is an obvious thing.

22. 音楽を好む。  
To be fond of music.

好む has older meanings, one of which is “to want/hope for”. This often had romantic connotations in the Classical era, and it could also refer to having something suit one’s interests. Nevertheless, the only time when such an old meaning is used today is in the following rather literary phrase.

23. 好むと好まざるとにかかわらず  
Whether you like it or not

---

## 気に入る

気に入る is a relevant 気 idiom referring to having a fancy for something/someone. Think of it as something getting into one likes. It is often like “to please”. It would not be used to express one’s affection to someone directly, but you could say that someone has 気に入った.

24. お気に入りのポケモンを選んでください。  
Choose the Pokemon you like.

25. そのカバー、気に入らないよ。別のを使って。  
I don't like that cover. Use another one.

normal

26. 気に入った女性の扱い方  
How to treat women you fancy

27. 気に入られようと努める。  
To strive to please/be liked.

---

### 惚れる

惚<sup>ほ</sup>れる is also “to fancy”, but this is like “head over heels for”. It is used for people or things, but it has negative undertones. That’s because its original meaning is “to be senile”, and “to be absent-minded”. The first is typically now 老い<sup>ほ</sup>耄れる, which uses the same verb with a different spelling.

28. 惚<sup>ほ</sup>れた腫れた。(Idiom)  
To be head over heels.

29. 惚<sup>あ</sup>れてしまえば痘<sup>あ</sup>痕<sup>ば</sup>も笑<sup>え</sup>窪<sup>く</sup>。(Idiom)  
She who loves an ugly man thinks him handsome.  
Literally: If you end up falling in love, pockmarks are the same as dimples.

30. 惚<sup>ほ</sup>れた弱<sup>よ</sup>み  
The weakness of being head over heels for someone

31. 惚<sup>ほ</sup>れた欲<sup>よく</sup>目でいうのじゃない。  
This isn't something said out of mere affection.

**Phrase Note:** The phrase 惚<sup>ほ</sup>れた欲<sup>よく</sup>目 refers to looking at someone with so much affection that you perceive the person (and the situation involving the person) above reality.

---

### 恋(を)する

恋<sup>こい</sup>(を)する is often known as referring to sexual love. Though this is true, it can still be used in situations such as to “to fall in love” and other things Westerners associate with romantic love altogether.

32. 恋<sup>こい</sup>に落<sup>お</sup>ちる  
To fall in love.

33. 恋<sup>こい</sup>から覚<sup>さ</sup>める。  
To fall out of love.

normal

34. 恋するあなたにだけあげよう。  
I'll give this to only you, who I love.

35. 恋してたが. . .  
I was in love with someone, but...

---

### Related Words to 恋する

By definition, 恋する refers to a strong yearning for someone. It can also be shown that you yearn for someone that you could never live with or someone that is deceased. This sense of almost nostalgic wanting is the original meaning, making it not surprising that the original verb form is 恋う. This meaning is typically given to the compound 恋い慕う, but 恋う is still used in limited situations. For instance, you can say 恋い続ける instead of 恋をし続ける. You can also say something like ふるさを恋う (to long for one's hometown). The adjectival form 恋しい means "missing/longing for".

36. 君が恋しくて会いたいよ。  
I miss you and want to see you.

37. 高校が恋しくなった。  
I've started to miss my high school.

38. 亡くなった母を恋い慕う。  
To yearn for one's mother even after death.

---

### 慕う

慕<sup>した</sup>う, alone, although meaning "to yearn" is a little different because it is used in situations where a person of lower status yearns/adores someone of higher status. In this sense of respect, it is the same as 敬<sup>けい</sup>慕<sup>ぼ</sup>する. However, it can also refer to loving such a person. 愛<sup>あい</sup>慕<sup>ぼ</sup>する looks like it would refer to love, but it is actually akin to nostalgia.

39. 彼のことを敬愛する。  
To adore him.

40. 日本の習慣を愛慕する。  
To long for the Japanese customs.

慕う can also be used in reference to animals longing for their masters. It can also refer to homesick, for which the adjectival form 慕わしい also exists. But, the oddest

meaning is for bugs to yearn for fire, which we've seen already with 好む.

41. 僕の犬が僕を慕ってついてくる。  
My dog adores me and follows along.

42. 国民こそって女王を慕う。  
For the citizens to all love the queen.

43. 祖国<sup>そこく</sup>を慕う民族  
A people which yearns for its ancestral land

44. 故郷<sup>こきょう</sup>の親友を慕わしく思う。  
To long for one's dear friend at home.

45. 虫が灯火を慕う夜に月が海を照らす。  
In the night with bugs swarming around the light, the moon brightens the sea.

**Speech Style Note:** 慕う and related words tend to be used mainly in the written language. Overall, it is slightly old-fashioned, but one can say its lack of use is due to the meaning itself, which makes it no different than the English equivalent.

---

### More Words for Yearning

Even more words exist for yearning. 恋慕する is to yearn for someone and is essentially the literary, Sino-Japanese version of 恋い慕う.

46. 人妻に恋慕する。  
To yearn for another man's wife.

<sup>あこが</sup>憧れる・<sup>あこが</sup>憬れる and <sup>どうけい・しょうけい</sup>憧憬 mean "to yearn", but they are not used in reference to yearning/loving someone. However, because they can be used in expressing for an event of some sort, something like 結婚に憧れる is completely OK. The latter is Sino-Japanese and strictly 書き言葉.

---

### Holding Feelings for Someone

As for holding feelings for someone, there are numerous ways of expressing this. Think of the following paraphrases. Words such as 思い (feelings), 心 (mind), 好意 (favor), 情 (emotion), いただく (to hold), etc. all refer to this idea of expressing one's feeling of love towards another. When you see the character 慕, though, think longing.

愛する

We have seen so many phrases related to love, and there are definitely other phrases out there, but the most important and highest level of love is 愛. Unlike 惚れる, which is slang and gives the impression that the person is out of it, and unlike 慕う, which is old-fashioned and shows a yearning, 愛する has a very deep feeling of emotion.

This means that unlike 好きだ, which is very natural for expressing one's like for someone, 愛する is far more potent. This is why you hear it so much in serious, romantic contexts in music. It doesn't have to be used with just people, but when it's not there is a great sense of value placed on something.

47. 愛してるよ。

I love you.

48. 愛はどこから来るのだろう。

Where does love come from?

49. おばあさんはみんなに、愛情をこめて最期の言葉を伝えた。

Our grandmother gave her final words to everyone with love.

50. 死ぬまで愛し続けよう。

I will continue to love you until I die.

51. コンピューターを愛するなんて無理でしょう。

Isn't it too much to love your computer?

When this “thing” happens to be a setting, feeling, etc., and can be viewed as meaning “to have adoration for”. 愛好する is related to this latter usage, and this is specific to loving a particular hobby.

52. 孤独<sup>こどく</sup>を愛する。

To love solitude.

53. ビジュアル系を愛好する。

To be in love with Visual Kei.

愛 can also be used in many compounds.

愛犬  
normal

Beloved dog

愛校心

School spirit

愛国

Love for one's country

愛車	Beloved car	愛読	Love for reading	愛人	Lover
----	-------------	----	------------------	----	-------

**Word Note:** 愛人 is similar to 恋人, but it is more like “one’s love”.

54. 恋人がいるの。

Do you have a boyfriend/girlfriend?

55. あの女はあいつの愛人の一人なんだ。

That woman is one of his lovers.

**Conjugation Note:** 愛す, its original form, can still be used in Modern Japanese, but the interesting thing is that it is now treated as a 五段 verb.

56. 君を愛せない。

I can’t love you.

57. どんなときでも愛そう。

I’ll love you no matter what.

---

## 恋愛

Always expect compounds like this to exist where two related characters are used to make yet another word of the same vein. This word is also love, but this one is very close to romance. It is a very common word.

58. 恋愛経験

Love experience

59. 恋愛関係

Romantic relationship

60. 恋愛小説

Romance novel

## 第174課: Hate

We have gone through all the phrases for liking and loving, but now it's time to go over hatred. Many of the phrases will look very similar, and unlike the previous phrases for liking and loving, there isn't much nuance splitting to worry about. However, like always, you should pay attention to detail.

## Hatred

normal
--------

## (大) 嫌いだ

The most basic word for "to hate" in Japanese is 嫌いだ. 嫌い implies that you hold a bad impression of something, and the disdain that you hold is a reaction to this. You can't use 嫌いだ to reject a request.

1. エッセイを書くのが嫌いだよ。

I hate writing essays.

2. 毎日走らなきゃいけないけど、ホントに嫌いだよ。とっても辛い<sup>つら</sup>んだ。いつも汗<sup>あせ</sup>かいてて、体中が濡<sup>ぬ</sup>れちゃうし、臭<sup>くさ</sup>くなっちゃうよ。

I have to run every day, but I really hate it. It's really tough, and I'm always sweating. My whole body gets drenched, and I end up smelling.

**Part of Speech Note:** The expression comes from the verb 嫌う, which means "to detest", but unlike it, 嫌いだ and 大嫌いだ are used as 形容動詞.

大嫌い is the extreme of hating, as is implied by the prefix 大-. This is an emphatic version of 嫌いだ. Both come from the verb 嫌う.

3. 大嫌いなスポーツはありますか。

Are there any sports that you hate?

4. 嫌いな人のことで悩<sup>なや</sup>む。

To fret over people who you hate.

5. スカンクが嫌いなの。(Feminine)

I hate skunks.

6. 好き嫌い

Likes and dislikes

7. 平気で嘘<sup>うそ</sup>つく人が大嫌いなの。(Feminine)

I hate people that can just flat out lie in your face.

8. 彼女は野球が大嫌いです。

She really hates baseball.

**Word Note:** ベースボール is the same thing as 野球, but it not used nearly as often.

嫌いがある is often used to show bad tendency. See more examples in Lesson 201.



9. 人前で鼻くそをほじる嫌いがある女性と付き合ったことある？

Have you ever dated a girl who picks her nose in public?

10. 蛙を棒で叩く嫌いがある、そのいたずらっ子はまたほかの小学生の目の前で蛙を殺したばかりなんだよ。どうしたらいいのかさっぱり分らんよ。

That bad kid that likes to hit frogs with sticks just killed a frog in front of the other elementary kids. I have no idea what we're going to do with him.

嫌う can be translated as "to hate". This hate is a very strong dislike, and although 嫌いだ comes from it, 嫌う is still more powerful. This hate implies that you don't want to deal with whatever or whoever you hate.

11. 人は何故矛盾<sup>むじゅん</sup>を嫌うのでしょうか。

Why do people despise contradiction?

12. いじめっ子を嫌うとしても、何の役にも立たないでしょう。

Even if you were to hate the bully, that does nothing, no?

13. 僕を嫌わないで。

Don't hate me.

On the flip side, though, it can even refer to animals and plants disliking something. So, vampires hating the sunlight would be a great example. When used with non-living things, it shows that two things are not compatible such as fire and water.

14. 本は湿気<sup>しっけ</sup>を嫌う。

Books hate moisture.

15. 吸血鬼<sup>きゅうけつき</sup>は日光を嫌う。

Vampires hate sunlight.

It is also found in the phrase 嫌わず, which uses the old negative auxiliary verb せず, which functions as しないで here. In this phrase, you just do something without even giving a dime about the place or person you're dealing with.

17. 中国では所嫌わず唾<sup>つば</sup>は吐いてしまうと、逮捕されるそう。

They say that if you spit carelessly anywhere in China that you get arrested.

**Etymology Note:** 嫌う potentially comes from the verb 切る + the Old Japanese auxiliary verb ぶ, which was very similar to ている. It survives in many words, but this one is not completely verified. However, it makes perfect sense. Proof for this can be found in the fact that its original meaning was 除き去る. Exclusion is closely related to **cutting** off. It also

used to mean to separate/distinguish and avoid. This is still seen rarely in Modern Japanese in への嫌いなく.

---

### いやだ

いやだ, written in 漢字 as 嫌だ or 厭だ, is very similar to 嫌いだ, but there are considerable differences. いやだ refers to situations in which you reject a person's request or invitation or a certain circumstance.

18. こんな時に行くなんていやだよ。  
No way am I going at a time like this.
19. 「先輩、先に帰ってもいいですか？」 「いやだよ」  
"Senpai, is it alright if I go home first?" "No way".
20. 息子がいやなことばかりするから、どうしつけたらいいかわかりません。  
Because my son keeps on doing bad things, I don't know how to discipline him.
21. 嫌だから、やめてちょうだい。  
No, that's bad. Please quit it.
22. 猫に<sup>さわ</sup>触られるのもいやになってきた。  
I've gotten to the point that it's awful to be touched by cats.
23. いやな気分になっても、平気でやりつづけなさい。  
Continue to work calmly even if you feel uncomfortable.

When you use いやだ in not accepting a certain person or thing, it is far stronger than 嫌いだ. For example, consider the following.

24. 健太くんなんか嫌いだよ。  
I really don't like Kenta.
25. 健太くんなんかいやだよ。  
Kenta is just no good.

The first sentence does show hatred towards Kenta, but the latter sentence is to the point that you don't even want to recognize his existence. It's almost like a euphemism for wishing he'd no longer live.

---

### 嫌がる・嫌がらせ

You can't just use 嫌だ for referring to what someone else hates/dislikes. Instead, you have to couple this with the auxiliary ～がる. The nominal form of the causative form of 嫌がる, 嫌がらせ, actually means "nuisance/annoyance". 嫌がらせをする happens to mean "to annoy (someone)".

26. 他人がいやがる仕事だけ引き受ける人、かわいそうだな。おれにもそんなことできないけどね。

People that only handle jobs that everyone else dislikes are pitiful, aren't they? I sure couldn't do any of it.

27. まず嫌がらせをした人の気持ちをよく考えればいいと思います。

I think you need to first think really hard about the feelings of the person you annoyed.

---

### だめだ

This phrase is meant to show that something is impossible or incompatible in light of the circumstances. It's often objective, although objectivity is not necessarily something natives think about when they use this word.

28. そもそも意味が重複したら、だめでしょうか。

Is it really bad in the first place for the meaning to be doubled?

29. 「先輩、お先に帰ってもいいですか？」 「ううん、だめだよ。まだ仕事あるから。」

"Senpai, is it alright if I go home first?" "No, that won't work because we still have things to do".

30. 健太なんかだめだよ。

Kenta is bad.

**Sentence Note:** This sentence is a qualification of some attribute to Kenta, not necessarily that you hate him.

---

### 憎む

Rarely spelled as 悪む and the primary verbal form of 憎い, this verb shows that you think something or someone is detestable. This verb can also be used to show abhorrence to an abstract thing such as an ideology or war.

31. 大統領を憎む。

To detest the president.

32. 共産主義を憎む。

normal

To detest communism.

33. 戦争を憎む。  
To detest war.

34. 恋敵<sup>こいがたき</sup>を憎むことが当然でしょう。  
It's only natural to detest a love rival.

35. 罪を憎んで、人を憎まず。(Set Phrase)  
I hate sin, not people.

---

### 憎らしい

憎らしい points out the (condition of the) person that makes you mad. Ironically, it is not always the case that this word has negative connotations.

36. 若者の砕けたスラングだらけの話し方が憎らしい。  
The broken down, slang filled speech of young people is detestable.
37. 愛犬を死なせた、あの人が憎らしい。  
That person who let my beloved dog die is detestable.
38. 憎らしい口を利く。  
To say hateful things.
39. 彼女はあまりにもかわいくて憎らしくなってきた。(More positive than negative)  
She's just so cute that it's gotten to me.

---

### 憎い

Unlike the opposite of love, 憎い expresses emotion of feeling displeasure, irritation, envy, etc. towards/about someone. It is you yourself who feels this discomfort. It also happens to have the old meaning of "ugly", which is now typically handled by 醜い except in rare circumstances.

40. 不正を許す大臣が憎い。  
I hate prime ministers who allow injustice.
41. 坊主憎<sup>ほうず</sup>けりや袈裟<sup>けさ</sup>まで憎い。(Set Phrase)  
He who hates Peter harms his dogs.  
Literally: If you hate a bonze, you also hate his kesa.

42. 妻がとっても憎いもんだ。  
I really hate my wife.
43. あんた、憎いこと言うね。(Ironic)  
You really do say some provoking things.
44. 憎き〇〇の豚どもを日本から追い出そう。(Racist)  
Let's drive all those ugly XX pigs out of Japan!

---

### 憎々しい・憎(っ)たらしい

These words are stronger versions of 憎らしい.

45. 彼は憎々しげにあのうるさい猫を蹴<sup>け</sup>ったが、すぐその後、あの猫が怪我<sup>けが</sup>で死んで、ひどく後悔<sup>こうかい</sup>した。  
He viciously kicked that annoying cat, but shortly afterwards, that cat died from its injuries, and he was filled with remorse.
46. あの人はね、とっても憎たらしいよ。  
That person just really infuriates me.

---

### 憎しみ

Rather than using 憎み, which is a word but not used as a noun, as the nominal form of 憎む, 憎しみ is typically used. The verb form 憎しむ did exist at one point, but it is no longer used.

47. 憎しみを覚える。  
To feel hatred/enmity.
48. 憎しみの炎を燃やす。  
To fuel the flames of hatred.

---

### 気に {食・喰} わない

This 気 idiom just shows that you just can't stomach something. It is rather colloquial, so there are plenty of instances you can use it in speaking.

49. 見くびられるの、気に食わない。  
I can't stand being looked down at (by others).

normal

50. あいつ、ちっとも気に入くわねーよ。  
I just can't stand that guy.
- 

### 嫌悪

This word is "hatred" by definition, and it is rather cruel hatred. People tend to not use this word correctly, and one of the most egregious misuses happens to be the following.

51. 嫌悪感を感じる X/△  
To feel hatred.

The problem is that the phrase is a 重複表現. Double phrases are almost always frowned upon in Japanese, and this is especially bad. however, all you have to do to make this phrase correct is replace 感じる with another verb like 覚える and 持つ.

52. 分かりづらいことばかり言う人に嫌悪感が覚える。  
To feel disgust towards people who only say things that are difficult to understand.

53. 自己嫌悪<sup>おちい</sup>に 陥 る。  
To despise oneself.

54. 自分の母親の殺人に対して嫌悪<sup>にんじょう</sup>を持つのは人情というものだ。  
It's only human nature to hold hatred against the murderer of your own mother.

55. 世界中の人々は残酷<sup>ざんこく</sup>さを嫌悪すべきだ。  
Everyone in the world should abhor cruelty.
- 

### 毛嫌いする

けぎら  
毛嫌いする is commonly used in the spoken language. This word, though, has the particular nuance of hating something for no particular reason.

56. 怠け者<sup>なま</sup>を毛嫌いしたほうがいい。  
It's best to hate lazy people.

57. インテリを毛嫌いするのですか。  
Do you detest intellectuals?

58. わけもなく村上春樹さんの小説を毛嫌いする人はバカだね。  
Those that hate Murakami Haruki's novels for no reason are stupid, aren't they?

**Person Note:** 村上春樹 is one of the current most renowned authors of Japanese literature.

## 不愉快

Although not necessarily hatred, 不愉快, the antonym of 愉快, shows that something is not pleasant at all and can put you in a bad mood. The reason why it is mentioned is because in contexts like the last example, it really is akin to "hate". Most of the time, it is typically equivalent to "disgusted" and "unpleasant". This word is also used frequently in the spoken language.

59. ちょっと不愉快な思いをした。  
I was a bit disgusted.
60. 不愉快な現実を認めなければなりません。  
You must recognize the unpleasant reality.
61. 不愉快な人と話すのはいやだね。  
Speaking to unpleasant people is awful, isn't it?
62. 本当に不愉快なやつだね、黒田君は。  
He's really a pain, that Kuroda.

## 憎悪

This word is rather literary, but it shows a very violent hatred, which is why it might be left more so to writing because of its potency.

63. 憎悪に満ちた目で睨む。  
To stare down with eyes full of revulsion.
64. 人種差別を憎悪する。  
To hate racial discrimination.
65. 憎悪の炎を燃やす。  
To fuel the flames of abhorrence.
66. 公開の場で憎悪の感情を抑えなくてはいけない。  
You must control your feelings of hatred in public.
67. 憎悪に<sup>か</sup>駆られてはならない。  
You can't get caught up in anger.
68. 憎悪で狂ったように人を殴<sup>なぐ</sup>ったり蹴<sup>け</sup>ったりしてしまう。

normal

To end up beating up and kicking people in a fit of mad rage.

---

## 忌む

This is by all means a literary word, but one usage other than "abhor" that this word has is "to be taboo", which is quite unlike the rest although semantically related.

69. 忌むべき者の<sup>かがりび</sup>篝火

Bonfire of the damned

70. 国民は革新を<sup>かくしん</sup>忌む方がよい。

It is best for the citizens to abhor the notion of revolution.

71. 日本人が死に通じるとして四を忌むことはアメリカ人でも知っている。

Even Americans know about the Japanese hating the number four because it correlates to death.

**Word Note:** 忌み嫌う is also possible and means "to detest/abhor", too. Just view it as a combination of 忌む and 嫌う.

---

## 厭う

<sup>いと</sup>厭う means "to begrudge", but its negative form means "willing". Since へない is used, this positive definition might be a surprise. This is the negative of "to begrudge". So, it is literally "to not begrudge in". This is normally spelled in かな. It is also important to note that this word is very literary. In fact, any word with 厭 is going to be uncommon and literary.

72. 彼女は手を差し出すこともいとわ<sup>さ</sup>ない。

She is willing to lend a hand.

73. 彼は要請に<sup>ようせい</sup>応じることをいと<sup>おう</sup>いません。

He is willing to answer to our requests.

74. 世をいとうな。

Hate not the world.

75a. お体をご自愛ください。

75b. お体おいとください。

Please be careful to not cause yourself any harm.

---



## 厭わしい

Like its verb form 厭う, 厭わしい is very literary. Its meaning is similar to it as it means "detestable/deplorable". The following sentence would be a good way to intelligently insult someone with class in one's word choice.

76. あの顔を見ることさえ厭わしい。  
Just looking at that face is deplorable.

## 厭悪

This is a very literary word meaning "detestation". The first sentence shows just how complicated a context with this word may be. It is important to note, though, that in reality when a word of hatred is used in a piece of literature, the surrounding context is likely to have more hate related words.

77. 双方ともに、自らの側に絶対不可分にして圧倒的な正義のあることをつねづね主張し、  
当然の嫌悪を抱いて相手の底知れぬ邪悪に、その野望、冷酷さ、背信、陰謀の数々に厭悪の  
眼差しを向けていた。

I always insisted on what was completely mutually inseparable from my own side and overwhelmingly righteous, and I naturally held hatred and gazed upon my enemy's bottomless evil, that ambition, the cruelty, the treachery, and the endless numbers of conspiracy in abhorrence.

From 智慧の林檎.

78. 厭悪の眼差し  
Gaze of detestation

## 第175課: Old

The word "old" has many usages. English speakers often disregard the multifaceted usages of English words when trying to express something in Japanese. To focus on the word "old" in particular, consider the following phrases which all have some phrase that translates as "old."

1. 年とった政治家は堪え性がない。  
Old politicians don't have endurance.
2. 年老いた犬を介護し、最後を看取る。  
To care for an old dog and watch its final moments.
3. 義父が老人ホームに入りたがらない。  
My father-in-law does not want to enter the nursing home.

normal

4. 老人を尊敬しないといけないことは肝に銘じている。

Respecting the old/elderly is engraved in me.

5. カシの老木を伐採する。

To cut down old oak trees.

6. 20歳になると、成人になる。

You become an adult when you turn twenty years old.

7. 夜が更けた。

The night grew old.

8. お子さんはいくつですか。

How old is your child?

9. 古い木造の家が全焼した。

An/the old, wooden house completely burned.

10. 昔からの慣習を重んじる。

To respect old traditions.

11. 前の彼氏にばったり出会った。

I came across my old boyfriend.

## Old (Age)

One problem English speakers have with Japanese is Japanese's lack of a simple pattern such as "# old" that can apply for anything. Depending on the object, the phrasing options are different.

Have you ever thought about the age of inanimate objects? There is nothing wrong in saying something like Ex. 12a, but Ex. 12b is also OK.

12a. 地球の年齢は何歳ですか？

12b. 地球の年齢は何年ですか。

How old is the age of the Earth?

The answer, however, would always be 46億年. Using 歳・才 would be incorrect. If your dog is 11, he/she is 11歳, not 11年. This is because dogs are alive and *like* humans.

Your apartment complex may be a 5年物, not 5歳. You may also live in a 5年前に建てた家 or 5年前に建った家 depending on context. With this in mind, consider the following examples.

normal

13. 100年前に建てられたホテル  
A hotel that was built 100 years ago

14. 三百年前に建った家だ。  
This is/it's a house built 300 years ago.

15. 築50年のマンションに住む。  
To live in an apartment of 50 years.

**Phrase Note:** 築#年 specifically shows how long ago a piece of architecture was constructed.

16. 10年もののワイン  
Ten year wine

17. 年代もののブドウ酒  
Old/aged wine

**Word Note:** The phrase 古いワイン exists as well.

18. これは50年もののワインだよ。  
This is a fifty year old wine.

**Particle Note:** The もの is 物. の can be dropped in this context. It is more traditional/correct with it.

19. 50年前の写真  
A photograph from fifty years ago

20. 30年前 (の) 車両  
Train cars from 30 years ago

**Particle Note:** The particle の may also be omitted here as well.

When you have something like ○○年齢は何歳, ○○の樹齢は何歳・何年, you get to use 歳 in the question. If you were to show a *difference* in age, 歳 is possible. Though, when the tree is far older than a human could ever be, ~歳 becomes impractical. Even so, 木の年齢差 is shown with ~年. ~歳違いの○○ or ~歳違っている, though, is common for animals and plants. It should be clear by now that everything is subject to pragmatic issues.

Applying ~歳 to something non-human personifies the object. We're fine with animals because we're animals. We're sometimes fine with plants because we have our tree lovers in Japan too. We're OK using it in a question when we specifically use the phrases 年齢・樹

齡, but unless you have a very specific environment, this isn't applied to something like a house.

21. 生後10か月の赤ちゃん

10 month baby

22. ほまれくんが10か月(歳) になりました。

Homare's now 10 months!

In Ex. 22, some speakers would add 歳 to equate the mile stones of months for their child in the same way they as if they were to turn one or two.

日齡 exists, but it's the age of something born/birthed. So, it can work for humans or even eggs. We can even go smaller by considering 時 (間) 齡 (hour age), 分齡 (minute age), and 秒齡 (second age). These are certainly not used in the spoken language, but we can get around this.

23. 14日齡卵

14 day old eggs

24a. 彼の母親は、彼がわずか5時間だった齡に亡くなった。△

24b. 彼の母親は、彼が生まれてわずか5時間後に亡くなった。

His mother died when he was only five hours old/His mother died only five hours after he was born.

**自然さ Note:** 19b is more natural than 19a. Japanese does not like having to express age in things so small and would rather avoid it by using phrases such as "after" if possible.

25. 海外在住の人が日本で里帰り出産する場合は、海外に戻るのにゼロ歳の赤ちゃんのパスポートが必要です。

In the case of people abroad who come home to give birth in Japan, a passport is needed for the zero year old child for returning overseas.

**Phrase Note:** Japanese has adopted ゼロ歳 and it is frequently used. You can also see 生後ゼロ歳ゼロヶ月.

26. 分裂して3秒後の菌

Three second old bacteria → bacteria three seconds after splitting

27. 13日培養された菌

Thirteen day old bacteria culture → Bacteria cultured for thirteen days

**Phrasing Note:** If English can avoid the phrase, then you can use that to help you understand how Japanese avoids "old".

This, however, wouldn't be a word that you would just use in conversation. The spoken language must have ways to go around this. With this in mind, consider the following. These examples show how Japanese takes close detail to the total semantic context.

28. 1日経過したパン

Day old bread

29. 3日経ったウニ

Three day old sea urchin(s)

30. 産卵から5日たった卵をゆでる。

To boil five day old eggs since being laid.

31. 生後5日の赤ちゃん

Five day old baby

32. 作ってから2日目のカレー

Curry one made two days ago

33. 妻の車は買ってから5年たっている。

My wife's car is five years old/of five years. → It has been five years since my wife bought her car.

## 第169課: Conjunctions

Conjunctions せつぞくし 接続詞 connect sentences together in Japanese. They don't normally connect clauses, however. This is quite unlike English, which often doesn't like some conjunctions being used at the beginning of a sentence. Instead, Japanese does a good job distinguishing between conjunctions, which is the topic of this lesson, and conjunctive particles.

Some conjunctive phrases are made of multiple phrases. This makes things a bit more complicated, especially when things look very similar minus one thing. Also be aware that all of the conjunctions may not be expressed with either conjunctions or conjunctive particles and thus will not be mentioned in this lesson.

In this this lesson conjunctions are labeled with the following terms. This lesson does not aim to teach you all conjunctive phrases in Japanese, but you will definitely learn what they are, how they are used, and plenty to practice with.

Function			Abbreviation
normal			

Parallelism	並行	へいこう	並
Alternation	代替	だいがえ	代
Addition	添加	てんか	添
Change	転換	てんかん	転
Concession	逆接	ぎゃくせつ	逆
Sequence	連続	れんぞく	連

## Single Word Conjunctions

転	さて	Now	添	加えて	Moreover
逆	しかし	However	逆	一方	On the other hand
添	しかも	Moreover	連	従って	Therefore
代	即ち	In other words	逆	ただし	Provided
添	そして	And	並	及び	And
転	そもそも	In the first place	添	なお	Still
添	且つ	Also	連	よって	Thus

### Usage Notes:

1. さて is used to change the topic of conversation. It may also be an interjection similar to "well" in English.
2. しかし is not used as frequently as the English equivalent "however". It is used, first and foremost, to contrast two different things.
3. When (その) 一方 (では) is used with 他方 (では) before it, in which case その may never precede it, the interpretation changes to "on the one hand". This extended pattern is not likely to be used in the spoken language.
4. Due to it looking like しかし, しかも is often misused by students. It is just like そのうえに.
5. そして shows that something additionally happens.

### Examples

1a. あるいは本当かもしれません。

1b. <sup>おそ</sup>恐らく (それが) 本当かもしれません。 (More natural)

normal

Perhaps that's true.

2. 明朝十時集合。ただし雨の場合は中止。

A 10 o'clock meeting tomorrow, but cancellation in case of rain.

3. しかも、あられが降ってるんだよ。

Besides, it's hailing!

**漢字 Note:** あられ may rarely be spelled as 霰

4. そりゃそもそもの始まりだった。

That's all it was to begin with.

5. 命は天に在り。然らばただ時を待つのみ。(Old-fashioned)

Life is in heaven. So, we just wait for the time.

6a. よく学び且つよく遊ぶ。(Not an imperative; Set phrase; old-fashioned)

6b. よく学びよく遊べ。(Imperative)

Study well and play well.

7. お金は即ち幸福と考える。

To think of money, in other words, happiness.

8. しかし、景気はまだ回復しない。

However, the economy hasn't recovered.

9. {さて・さあ}、始めよう。

Well, let's begin.

10. だったら、手伝おう。

If that's the case, I'll help.

11. 但し雨の場合は延期。

However, it will be postponed in the case of rain.

12. 彼女は歌人であり、かつ小説家であります。

She is a tanka poet, and she is also a novelist.

13. あいつはそもそも殺すつもりはなかった。

He didn't have an intention of killing in the first case.

normal 対0の均衡を破る。

To break a tie of 0-0.

**Word Note:** 対 is the equivalent of "versus".

15. 先<sup>ま</sup>ず日本へ行きました。そしていろいろなところへ行きました。  
First of all, I went to Japan, and I went to a lot of different places.

16. よ<sup>くだん</sup>って件<sup>ごと</sup>の如し。(Set phrase; Formal)  
Therefore, it is as the aforementioned statement.

## Multiple Word Conjunctions

連	そのうえ	Besides	連	そのうち	Some day
代	または	Or	添	ところで	By the way
連	何故なら	Because	連	そればかりか	Besides
逆	だから	Because	連	さもないと	Otherwise
添	それで	And so	連	それから	Then
代	それとも	Or	連	それなら	If so
添	こうして	With this	添	そうして	With that
代	もしくは	Or	逆	それどころか	Rather
並	並びに	Both...and...	逆	それでも	Nevertheless
連	それ故	Therefore, thus	連	それにしても	Even so
連	故に	Accordingly	連	それにつけても	Anyway
逆	だが	But	連	それはさておき	By the way
連	それに	Moreover			

17. それゆえ、銃<sup>じゅうげきせん</sup>撃<sup>し</sup>戦<sup>しゃ</sup>の死者<sup>のほ</sup>は百人以上に上ります。  
Therefore, the casualties from the shoot-out will climb to over 100.

18a. 行<sup>ゆ</sup>く川<sup>た</sup>の流れは絶えず溢<sup>あふ</sup>れ出している故にもとの水ではない。

18b. 行<sup>ゆ</sup>く川<sup>た</sup>の流れは絶えずして、しかももとの水にあらず。(Original Classical version)  
The flow of a passing river endlessly flows; hence, it is not the original water.

19. その代<sup>か</sup>わりに、本を買った。

normal Instead, I bought a book.



20. ところでお仕事は？

By the way, your job is?

21. それにつけても思い出すのは古き良き時代だ。

Anyways, that reminds me of the good old days.

22. 新語並びに外来語に関する資料を調べる。

To examine data about both neologisms and foreign expressions.

23. そういえば、久実さんはどうしてるんだろう？

Now that I think of it, I wonder what Kumi is doing?

24. 日本語には同音異義語が多い。{故に・それゆえ・よって・そういうわけで・そのよう  
なわけで・従って・このため・そのため・だから・このことから}、漢字で書く。

Japanese has a lot of homophones. Therefore, you write with Kanji.

**Historical Note:** The introduction of 漢字 caused Japanese to have a lot of homophones.

**Word Note:** From the single example above, there are a lot of possible conjunctions out there that relatively mean the same thing. However, what are their exact differences?

- 故に shows that due to the fact it's after, the following is as effect.
- それ故に shows that the stated matter is reason for the next case stated after it.
- よって states that the previous sentence as the reason or evidence.
- そういわけで・そのようなわけで = With that reason
- 従って = Therefore; so; consequently.
- このため・これゆえに = Points that as the goal or reason.
- そのため = このため. This is a rare occasion with これ are interchangeable それ.
- だから = So; because
- このことから = With this

Even in English, there are several interchangeable but slightly different phrases that can be used. The specifics and impromptu nature of speech at a given situation is the ultimate determining factor. Some of these are more formal or casual than the others. So, that has a lot to do with which is used.

25a. だから言わないことじゃない。

25b. だから言わんこっちゃない。(Slang/very casual)

I told you so.

26. その結果、試験に受かった。

normal because of that, I passed the exam.

27. それはさておき、東京に引<sup>こ</sup>越すんだ。  
By the way, I'm moving to Tokyo.
28. それにしても {どれも・いずれも} 決<sup>けっ</sup>して完<sup>かん</sup>璧<sup>ぺき</sup>じゃないね。  
Even so, nothing is perfect, you know?
29. しかしながら、予<sup>よ</sup>算<sup>さん</sup>がかかりすぎる。  
However, it is too much for the budget.
30. 我<sup>われ</sup>思<sup>おも</sup>う、故<sup>ゆ</sup>に我<sup>われ</sup>あり。  
I think; therefore, I am.
31. そればかりか動物も殺された。  
Besides that, even the animals were killed.
32. それどころか、もう20歳です。  
Rather, he's already twenty.
33. その結果試験に落ちた。  
And thus, I failed the exam.
34. さもないと警察を呼ぶぞ。  
If you don't, I'll call the police.
35. 度々インフルエンザに市民の半分もしくは全<sup>ぜん</sup>員<sup>いん</sup>かかっ<sup>とこ</sup>て床につくこともある。  
Often, (the city) also has times where half or all of the citizens are down with influenza.
36. それなら、いつも学校に遅<sup>おく</sup>れるのはどういうわけですか。  
If that's the case, how is it that you're always late to school?
- 

### それで、それに、それから、& そして

Many people confuse それで and それに. それで shows that what was stated before is the reason or cause for what follows while それに shows another additional fact or situation. Also, if the previous facts were positive in nature, so should the additional information. This is the same for negative things too. そこで is also similar to それで, but it is specifically used to when you know in detail the reason for what follows. The previous context is very concrete, and this is not always the case with それで. そこで can also be used to mean さて, and this is something それで never means.

Other related conjunctions include それから and そして. The former is used to mean "after that/then" showing chronological order of events. The latter is the generic "and".

37. 韓国語は面白いです。それに、役に立ちます。

Korean is interesting. Moreover, it's beneficial.

38. 「ロッテリアは値段も安いし、おいしいんです」「それで人が多いんですね」

"Lotteria is cheap and delicious" "So, that's why it's crowded."

39. きのう風邪を引きました。それで、今日学校を休んだんです。

I caught a cold yesterday. So, I stayed away from school today.

40. 昨日は授業のあと公園へ行きました。それから、三時間ぐらい友達と話をしました。

Yesterday, I went to the park after class. Then, I talked for about three hours with friends.

41. 私はおとし五月に卒業しましたが、それからずっと仕事を探しています。

I graduated in May two years ago, but I've been searching for a job ever since.

42. 「このごろどうですか。忙しいですか」「宿題がたくさんありますし、それに、暇な時間はほとんどありません」

"How have you been lately? Are you busy?" "I have a lot of homework, and on top of that, I barely have any free time".

43. 「あなたのアパートは、どんなアパートですか」「私のアパートはきれいなところですし、それに家賃が安いので、住みやすいです」

"What kind of apartment do you have?" "My apartment is a pretty place, and since the rent is cheap, it's easy to live there".

**Phrase Note:** When using それに, all the parts of the sentence must either have positive or negative connotations but never both!

44. 「あなたの住んでいる町はどんな町ですか」「人口が少なく美しい町です。それに、雰囲気の良いところです」

"What kind of town is the town that you live in?" "It's a small, beautiful town. Moreover, it is a local town with a good atmosphere".

**Word Note:** 人 can replace 人口 above, but it is not the best choice of the two.

45. 「日本語の勉強はどうですか」「宿題が簡単ですし、それに日本人と毎日会話しております」

"How are your Japanese studies?" "My homework is easy, and I talk to Japanese people

normal

every day”.

### 読み物: アイヌ語を守ろう!

This is an example of a small speech in Japanese. Read through the text and answer the questions that follow. Conjunctions will be in bold. No English will be given. You are free to use previous lessons and dictionary resources to understand the text.

皆様、こんにちは。〇〇と申します。今日は、「アイヌ語を守ろう」というテーマについて、発表させていただきます。

私は大学で言語学を専攻しており、特に東アジアの言語学について研究しております。その中で、日本の文化の一部であるアイヌ語が消滅の危機にあるということを知りました。言語学を専攻している私にとって、言語の消滅は無視することの出来ない問題です。**また**、言語は人間のごとく生きているというのが私の考えです。アイヌ語の命が絶たれたならば、**いわば**、使われなくなってしまったのなら、もう二度とアイヌ語が復活できなくなってしまうと考え、今回の発表のテーマに至りました。

**先ず**、簡単にアイヌ語について説明させていただきます。アイヌ語とは、日本の北海道などで、話されている少数言語です。多くのアイヌ人は、現代では、両親からアイヌ語を教わっていません。アイヌ語の教室が開設されていても、ほとんどの人が学ぼうとしない、というのが現状です。このように、消滅の危機にあるアイヌ語ですが、私はアイヌ語を保たなければならぬと思います。

**では**、どうしてアイヌ語を保つ必要があるのでしょうか。それはアイヌ語の独自性にあります。アイヌ人の歴史や経験が記号化されたものがアイヌ語です。**例えば**、「神」という日本語はアイヌ語の「カムイ」から出来ました。これは、大昔に、神道の概念がなかった日本語が根本的な神道の概念を持つアイヌ語の影響を受けたことに由来します。**他にも**、「ラッコ」や「トナカイ」、「くま」などアイヌ語に影響を受けた日本語が少なからず存在します。このように、アイヌ語の独自性が日本の文化に含まれていることは明らかなのです。アイヌ語も日本語と同じく尊重されるべきではないでしょうか？

現在、アイヌ語のネイティブスピーカーのほとんどが高齢者になってしまっているので、会話を保存するといった方法でアイヌ語を守ろうとしている人がいるそうです。これらのテープを使って、未来の熱心な生徒のために勉強教材を作ることができるになればいいと

思います。アイヌ語が消滅する可能性は依然として高いものの、こういった効果的な活動のため、近いうちに消滅してしまう可能性も、少しずつですが、減ってきているようです。これから多くの日本人がアイヌ語の尊さに気づき、アイヌ語が継承されていくことを願います。

これで私の発表を終わります。ご静聴どうもありがとうございました。何かご質問などありますでしょうか？

Questions:

1. What is the theme of this speech?
2. Why is Ainu important to protect according to this person?
3. What are some examples of Ainu influence in Japanese?
4. What has become of the Ainu speaking population?
5. What is being doing to protect Ainu?
6. What is the presenter majoring in?
7. What is language linked to?
8. Is it still likely Ainu will die out?

## 第176課: やはり & さすが

These two adverbial expressions are referred to as phrases that don't have good English equivalents. Although this is true, the main thing that is brushed aside is how to differentiate between them. Though they are different enough to the point that that shouldn't really be an issue, it's best to make sure that you know when to use them.

### やはり

やはり, also やっぱり, やっぱし, and やっぱ in slang, means "just as one thought", "as of/still yet/now". It may also suggest a feeling of returning back to one's original idea or motives.

1. やっぱ（り）、これでは変だよ。  
This here is weird as I thought.
2. やはり想像した通りの家です。  
This is the house just as I had imagined.
3. やっぱり殺されちゃった。  
I knew that he was killed.
4. やっぱしだめ。

normal

It's bad in the end.

5. やっぱり来たのね。

Here you come again.

6. 「夏休みはどうしたんですか」「日本語を勉強しました」「じゃあ、たくさん勉強できたでしょう」

「ええ、でも、夏はやっぱり暇な時間がたくさんあると思いました」

「そうですね。ところで、きのうはどんなレストランへ行ったんですか」

「メキシコ風料理屋へ行きました」「おいしかったですか」

「ええ、でも、私は韓国人だから、やっぱり味が韓国料理店のとすごく違うと思いました」

"How was your summer break?". "I studied Japanese". "Well, so you got to do a lot of studying, right?". "Yes, but, I thought that there was a lot of free time". "True, by the way, what kind of restaurant did you go to yesterday?". "I went to a Mexican food restaurant". "Was it good?". "Yes, but since I'm Korean, I thought that the flavor was quite different from a Korean restaurant".

## さすが

さすが is just one of those words that gives a lot of trouble because it doesn't have an English equivalent. **さすが** shows something good is as expected. It can also be used with the negative to show that although one thought one's expectations would come through, things don't pan out so. This pattern is often used with 〜だけあって.

7. さすがだな。

Just as expected.

8. 時は金なりとはさすがによく言えている。

It is indeed said that time is money.

**Grammar Note:** とは quotes a set phrase. In this set phrase, なり is simply a classical copular verb.

9. さすがは彼女だ。

It's just like her to.

10. 田中さんは、プロだけあって、さすがにホームランが打てますよ。

Since Tanaka is a pro, he can hit home runs as expected.

11. 有名なレストランだけあって、さすがに予約をしても、いつも客が長い列を作っていて、席に案内されるのに長時間がかかるのです。

normal

Given that it's a famous restaurant, even when you get a reservation, there is always a line of customers, and it takes a long time to get seated.

12. 彼は**さすが**は大統領です。  
He is worthy to be the president.

13. **さすが**の僕もそこまでは言えませんよ。  
Even I can't say to that extent.

**Variant Note:** さすかの = さしもの. However, the latter is rare and is seen in literature.

**Orthography Note:** さすが can be seldom seen written in 漢字 as 流石.

## 第177課: せっかく & わざわざ

These are mixed up all the time by students. Maybe it's because わざわざ is just so fun to say?

### せっかく & わざわざ

せっかく shows something that is done through great trouble or time to reach a certain point or condition. It is an adverbial noun, so it is possible for it to act as a noun. Again, there is some sort of big cost implied, and it is that cost being put into good use that's being insisted on.

There are several grammatical environments that せっかく can be used in.

- せっかくの: Used as a noun with の to be an attribute.
- せっかく...のだから: Combined with のだから to stress hard efforts that are to be well known by the listener.
- せっかく...のに: This is often used in declining something from someone, assuming the person went through the trouble. However, depending on the situation, it can be used sardonically. It can also be used by the person who went through the hard efforts. Or it could be used to show a shame.
- せっかくだから: Used by someone excepting an opportunity from the person that went through the trouble.
- せっかくだが: Used in declining something from someone who went through the trouble.

These are simply applications of せっかく with other patterns. Of course, you should always be aware of how polite you should be to someone.

## Examples

1. せっかく日本語を習ったんだから、日本語をぺらぺらと話すことができるようになりたいです。

Since I've taken the trouble to study Japanese, I want to become able to speak Japanese fluently.

**Nuance Note:** んだから implies that the person you're speaking to is well aware of your Japanese skills.

2. せっかくの苦勞も<sup>あだ</sup>仇になった。

All my troubles have been done for nothing.

3. せっかくの苦勞が水の泡<sup>あわ</sup>になった。

All my pains were in vain.

4. せっかくのご厚意<sup>こうい</sup>ですから、お受けしましょう。

For your great kindness, I accept.

5. せっかく習った日本語は忘れないようにしましょう。

Please try not to forget Japanese, which you've taken the trouble to learn.

6. せっかく日本へ行っても、日本人と話さないと、日本語は上手になりません。

Even if you make the efforts to go to Japan, if you don't speak with Japanese people, your Japanese won't get better.

7. せっかくアメリカへ来たんだから、しばらく滞在<sup>たいざい</sup>してください。

Since you've gone through the trouble to come to America, please stay for a while.

8. せっかくエッセイを書いたのに、文が全部消えてしまったよ。

Although I spent so much energy writing my essay, it got completely erased!

9. せっかくやれるなら、やってほしいんだが。 (失礼な言い方)

If you could do it, I'd like you to, but...

**Orthography Note:** せっかく can be written in 漢字 as 折角 or 切角

---

## せっかく VS わざわざ

せっかく gives a feeling that something should not be wasted because one has put a lot of effort into it. It can be used as a nominal, and it is often used in refusing a request. わざわざ, normal the other hand, can only be used as an adverb and describes that there was no necessity



to go through the trouble. It is often used out of care for a person.

10. お忙しいところをわざわざ来ていただいて、すみません。  
I'm sorry for having you come all the way while you're busy.

11. 焼き肉を食べにわざわざ北見市まで行きました。  
I went all the way to Kitami to eat yakiniku.

12. せっかくですがお構<sup>かま</sup>いなく。  
Thank you, but don't trouble.

13. せっかく作ったんですから、食べてみてください。  
Since I went through the trouble to make it, please try to eat it.

14. わざわざ取りに帰らなくてもいいですよ。  
It's alright for you to not go all the way home to get it.

15. せっかくの休みなのに、仕事をしなけりゃいけないさ。(すごく砕けた言い方)  
Although it's a long-awaited holiday, I have to work.

16a. 多忙なところをわざわざお越し頂きありがとうございます。 (もっと自然)

16b. 多忙なところを押して来てもらってありがとうございます。  
Thank you very much for coming for me although you are quite busy.

## 第178課: せめて

This really isn't that hard. So, take this as a break from hard studying.

### せめて

せめて means "at the very least". せめて is used when implied that more is desirable. After all, "it's the very least". Because of this, it is often used with the particle くらい・ぐらい to make the statement less specific/direct. With は, it may be translated as "if it is unavoidable".

1. せめて夢の中なら、何でも自由にできるでしょう。  
Shouldn't you at least be able to do anything freely inside a dream?

2. せめて酒はやめなよ。(Casual)  
Quit drinking at the very least.

3. 小さな事業でも興したいので、せめてパソコンくらいはほしいです。  
Because I want to start up a small business, I want at least a computer.

4. どんなに経済的にも大変でも、せめて光熱費を払ったほうがいい。  
No matter how financially troubled you are, it's best to at least pay your utility bills.
5. せめて一万円は支払わなきゃいけねー。(Slang)  
If it cannot be helped, I'll have to pay 10,000 yen.
6. せめて宿題ぐらいはしといてくれ。(Casual; potentially rude; 男性語)  
At the very most, do your homework beforehand!
7. せめて一年間ぐらい日本に住んでみたいんですがねえ。(20年代後半以降)  
I'd like to at least live in Japan for a year.
8. どんなに疲れていても、せめて三十分ぐらいは勉強してください。  
No matter how tired you are, at least study for thirty minutes.
9. せめて週に一回ぐらいは運動した方がいいですよ。  
It's best to at least exercise once a week.
10. どんなにあの人が嫌いでも、せめて挨拶ぐらいはしたほうがいい。  
No matter how much you hate that person, it's best to at least greet him.
11. 毎日せめて一時間ぐらい勉強してきてほしいですねえ。  
I wish that they'd at least come to study an hour daily.
12. アメリカでは、せめて一度はハワイへ行ってみたいと思う人が多い。  
There are a lot of people in America who would like to visit Hawaii at least once.

**漢字 Note:** ハワイ may also rarely be spelled in 漢字 with the あて字 spelling 布哇. If you are to ever type this, do not use 羽合, which has the same pronunciation but is a town in Japan.

## 第179課: Idioms II: Basic Expressions

An idiom (慣用句) is a set expression that diverts to some degree from the literal definition from which it originally derives.

It is very easy to comprehend an idiom when said in one's native language. When a Japanese person thinks or hears a given set phrase, their mind naturally thinks of the idiomatic intent from its literal approach. So, no matter how deviant a phrase is from the literal arrangement of words, a connection is still visible and very much shows the cultural reasoning why a phrase means what it does idiomatically. But, a definition of a said idiom from another language is a different story and requires a two step process.

1. Understanding the literal meaning of the phrase
2. Understanding what is actually trying to be said

normal

Idioms is by far the most difficult aspect of the Japanese language. This is further compounded by the sheer number of idioms that exist in the language. On the spot translation without a culture translation can lead to a horrible chain of events caused by tripping into the 'idiomatic cultural divide'.

Many idioms in Japanese derive from unique indigenous concepts such as martial arts and an array of ceremonies--tea, etc. The sheer number, though, of the idioms that exist can be reduced by realizing a few key concepts.

Many idioms are only different from each other by a single synonymous and interchangeable particle or word. Understanding particles is an important element in understanding idioms and constructing them. At this point in IMABI, this should not be a problem. If it is a problem, you will have many problems as particle usage can greatly alter the meaning intended in an idiomatic expression.

It is also important to realize that many idioms are only off by transitivity orientation. The nuance given off is really the only thing, then, that typically changes. First person is normally shown with transitive expressions and intransitive expressions show some sort of observation.

Something that is hard to decipher, especially in text, is the sense that an idiom is being used in. Here, context decides. For example, if you go to a jail and set everyone free, you would say 自由にした. But, if you were instead an interrogator of the prisoners, you would have most likely meant that you had them all at your mercy.

Lastly, do not be completely overwhelmed by the expressions that are basically completely different from their literal meanings. You will just have to sit, think, study, and learn them.

In the chart below there are some of the many common idioms that are used in Japanese. Take note of their particle usages, what kind of noun and verb combinations that are made, and determine the degree of 'idiomaticity' there is between the literal and idiomatic definitions. Following the chart, there will be several example sentences to give you the cultural background to better apply them in your speech.

## Idioms

		Meaning	Literal Meaning
火に油を注ぐ	ひにあぶらをそそぐ	Add fuel to the fire	Pour grease in a fire
転ばぬ先の杖	ころばぬさきのつえ	Look before you leap	Twig of point that doesn't fall
金看板を掛ける <small>はる</small> normal	きんかんばんをかける	To assume importance	To hang a billboard with gold

草を結ぶ	くさをむすぶ	To return a favor	To bind grass
声が詰まる	こえがつまる	To speak in a choked voice	For the voice to choke
声を曇らす	こえをくもらす	To falter out	To cloud the voice
声を呑む	こえをのむ	To swallow one's words	To swallow one's voice
声を立てる	こえをたてる	To cry out	To raise one's voice
暮しに困る	くらしにこまる	To be in financial trouble	To be troubled in livelihood
暮しを立てる	くらしをたてる	To make a living	To raise a living
芸が立つ	げいがたつ	To be a master of the arts	For skill to stand
芸は身を助く	げいはみをたすく	Art brings bread	A skill will save yourself
蔵が建つ	くらがたつ	To become a millionaire	A storage house to be built
車に切る	くるまに切る	To cut clockwise	To cut in a car
癖を直す	くせをなおす	To break a habit	To fix a habit
記録に載る	きろくにのる	To be recorded	To appear in the records
義理がある	ぎりがある	To be bound by duty	To have duty
看板を下す	かんばんをおろす	To close down shop	To take down a billboard
肝胆を出す	かんたんをいだす	To do with devotion	To show one's inner being
慣例を残す	かんれいをのこす	To set precedent	To leave behind a precedent
勘定を留める	かんじょうをとめる	To run up bills	To pile up bills
嘴が黄色い	くちばしがきいろい	To be immature	For the beak to be yellow
嘴を入れる	くちばしをいれる	To interfere with	To put in one's beak
嘴を鳴らす	くちばしをならす	To babble about	To sound one's beak
気が焦る	きがあせる	To be impatient	For the mind to be in a hurry
気が荒い	きがあらい	To be quarrelsome	For the mind to be violent
気が進む	きがすすむ	To feel like doing	For the mind to advance

気が軽い	きがかるい	To be sociable	For the mind to be light
気が座る	きがすわる	To be at ease	For the mind to sit
気が置ける	きがおける	To feel ill at ease	For the mind to be place-able
気がそれる	きがそれる	To be distracted	For the mind to divert
気が多い	きがおおい	To be fickle	To have many minds
気が大きい	きがおおきい	To be generous	To have a big mind
気が腐る	きがくさる	To be dejected	For one's mind to rot
気に持つ	きにもつ	To weigh on one's mind	To hold in one's mind
雲を凌ぐ	くもをしのぐ	To rise over the clouds	To gain advantage of clouds
組みになる	くみになる	To join forces	To become a group
組みを選ぶ	くみをえらぶ	To choose sides	To choose groups
訓練が行届く	くんれんがいきとどく	To be well-trained	For training to be well-kept
先がある	さきがある	To have potential	To have a future
先に立つ	さきにたつ	To be in the lead	To stand ahead
先を読む	さきをよむ	To look into the future	To read the future
気が戻る	きかもどる	To be turned off	For the mind to return
酒に痛む	さけにいたむ	To get dead drunk	To ache in liquor
酒に回される	さけにまわされる	To lose oneself to liquor	To be winded in liquor
酒を使う	さけをつかう	To be under the influence	To use liquor
肉が落ちる	にくがおちる	To lose weight	For meat to drop
匙を投げる	さじをなげる	To throw in the towel	To throw a spoon
鯖を読む	さばをよむ	To cheat in counting	To read the mackerel
最期を遂げる	さいごをとげる	To die a pitiful death	To achieve one's latter end
策に富む	さくにとむ	To be resourceful	To be rich in measures

策を弄する	さくをろうする	To use artifice	To play with measures
工夫を凝らす	くふうをこらす	To work out a plan	To concentrate devices
気に留める	きにとめる	To keep in mind	To keep in the mind
災難を免れる	さいなんをまぬかれる	To avoid a disaster	To avoid misfortune
財布を叩く	さいふをたたく	To empty one's purse	To hit one's purse
財布を満たす	さいふをみたす	To fill one's purse	To fill one's purse
構想を練る	こうそうをねる	To rack one's brains	To draw up a framework
座を冷ます	ざをさます	To ruin the mood	To cool the seat
才に溺れる	さいにおぼれる	To rely heavily on talent	To drown in ability
我を忘れる	われをわすれる	To get carried away	To forget oneself
割符が合う	わりふがあう	To meet eye to eye	To match tallies
草鞋を剥ぐ	わらじをはぐ	To end one's journey	To take off one's sandals
利に走る	りにはしる	To be eager to make profit	To run to profits
巧言を用いる	こうげんをもちいる	To flatter	To use flatter
涎が出る	よだれがでる	To be delicious	To begin to drool
運に任せる	うんにまかせる	Trust to Providence	To entrust in destiny
気前がいい	きまえがいい	To have an open hand	To have good generosity
歓心を買う	かんしんをかう	To buy favor	To buy favor
口火となる	くちびとなる	To trigger something	To become the spark
口火を切る	くちびをきる	To spark something	To cut the spark
攻撃を防ぐ	こうげきをふせぐ	To defend against an attack	To prevent an attack
看板が泣く	かんばんがなく	Not true to one's name	For the billboard to cry
冠を曲げる	かんむりをまげる	To take offense	To bend a crown
気が急く	きがせく	To feel hard pressed	For the mind to be hurried

犠牲を払う	ぎせいをはらう	To make a sacrifice	To pay a sacrifice
気は心	きはこころ	It's the thought that counts	The mind's the heart
気が重い	きがおもい	To feel depressed	For the mind to be heavy
気が散る	きがちる	To be distracted	For the mind to be scattered
気が乗らない	きがのらない	To not be in the mood	For the mind to not be riding
火事に遭う	かじにあう	To be in a fire	To encounter a fire
口車に乗る	くちぐるまにのる	To be cajoled into something	To ride a cajoler
傘に乗る	かさののる	To be carried away	To ride an umbrella
過去に生きる	かこにいきる	To live in the past	To live in the past
仇を成す	あだをなす	To make enemies	To give birth to enemies
案に落つ	あんにおつ	To go according to plan	To fall into a plan
左右に托する	さゆうにたくする	To dodge an issue	To make excuses left and right
授業を休む	じゅぎょうをやすむ	To miss a class	To take a rest from class
処置に窮する	しょちにきゅうする	To be at a loss	For a measure to be a loss
塵界を脱する	じんかいをだっする	To retire from the world	To get out of a dirty world
気を引く	きをひく	To rouse excitement	To draw in minds
奇跡を現す	きせきをあらわす	To achieve a miracle	To reveal a miracle
期待に添う	きたいにそう	To meet expectations	To live up to expectations
隙に乗じる	すきにじょうじる	To catch off guard	To take advantage of gaps
逃げを打つ	にげをうつ	To attempt to escape	To hit an escape
気を揉む	きをもむ	To be anxious about	To worry the mind
恥を搔く	はじをかく	To be ashamed	To scratch one's shame

鼻薬を嗅がせる	はなぐすりをかがせる	To offer a bribe	To make...smell nasal spray
幅に成る	はばになる	To gain prestige	To become width
百計が尽きる	ひゃっけいがつきる	To be at the end of the rope	To exhaust all means
顰蹙を買う	ひんしゅくをかう	To be frowned upon	To buy frowning on
不信を抱く	ふしんをいだく	To have a suspicion	To hold a distrust
管を巻く	くだをまく	To blurt out something	To wind a pipe
風致を害する	ふうちをがいする	To spoil the view	To damage the scenic beauty
武を争う	ぶをあらそう	To struggle for supremacy	To fight martial affairs
風呂を落とす	ふろをおとす	To empty a bathtub	To drop a bathtub
狐が落ちる	きつねがおちる	To come to one's senses	The fox falls
狐に摘まされる	きつねにつままされる	To be baffled	To be caught by the fox
不平を並べる	ふへいをならべる	To whine over	To line up dissatisfaction
不評を買う	ふひょうをかう	To lose popularity	To buy a bad reputation
枕を重ねる	まくらをかさねる	To sleep together regularly	To stack up pillows
枕を砕く	まくらをくだく	To fret over	To break a pillow
身を誤る	みをあやまる	To go astray	To misjudge the body
見切りで買う	みきりでかう	To buy at a reduced price	To buy with abandonment
虫の居所が悪い	むしのいどころがわるい	To be in a bad mood	The the bug is in a bad spot.
虫が良すぎる	むしがよすぎる	To ask for too much	For a bug to be too good




肘鉄砲を食う	ひじでっぼうをくう	To get snubbed	To eat at a rebuff
馬力がある	ばりきがある	To have stamina	To have horse power
日が浅い	ひがあさい	To be only recent	For the day to be shallow
日を消す	ひをけす	To spend one's time	To erase the day
火を被る	ひをかぶる	To be overcome with grief	To wear fire
舞台を踏む	ぶたいをふむ	To make one's debut	To step on stage
平気を装う	へいきをよそおう	To keep one's head	To put on calmness
気を負う	きをおう	To be eager	To bear the mind
芸がない	げいがない	To be good for nothing	To have no art/skill
声を殺す	こえをころす	To talk in a whisper	To kill one's voice

## Example Sentences

Despite that idiomatic phrases are typically stand-alone phrases that can be and are understood in isolation, it is helpful to see context with these phrases. Do not be confused with syntax as nothing out of the ordinary was shown. If you must, get familiar with the literal definitions to think of the phrases.

1. おやつで腹の虫を抑えたらどうや。 (Dialectical)  
What do you think about easing your emotions with a little snack?
2. なんとなくあいつ、虫が好かねえ。 (Vulgar)  
For some reason I just don't like that guy.
3. うちの家はよく日が当たります。  
My house gets a lot of sun.
4. 火のないところに煙はたたぬ。 (Slightly old-fashioned)  
There's no smoke without fire.
5. 日を見るより明らかな問題だと強調しております。 (Humble)  
I'm stressing that it is a problem as clear as day.
6. 社会で幅をきかせている。  
To be having a big influence and becoming prestigious in society.

 板を下ろすとは廃業して店をたたむということである。 (改まった)

"Kanban wo orosu" is to shut down a shop in discontinuing a business.

8. 塵界を脱して逃れた方がましだ。

I'd rather retire and run away from the hustle and bustle of this world.

9. 5歳ほど鯖を読むのにFacebookアカウントを作る子供が多いそうです。

There are supposedly a lot of kids that make a Facebook account that edge their age by a little 5 years.

10. 彼はいつも自分の思い通りじゃないと気がすまない嫌いがある。

He has the tendency to always want his way.

11. コンピューターがついていて気が散ってちっとも勉強できないんだ。

I can't study at all when the computer is on.

## 第180課: Nouns → Verbs with する

Numerous verbs are made with する attached to nouns. する is primarily seen after

かんごめいし  
漢語名詞, nouns that are Sino-Japanese (Chinese based) in origin or composition, for this.

However, する is not limited to these nouns. It is also seen after native words and recent loanwords.

To study	勉強する	To buy and sell	売買する
To eat and drink	飲食する	To point out	指図する
To oversleep	寝坊する	To exchange (money)	両替する
To love (sexual relation)	恋する	To sweat	汗する
To copy	コピーする	To sign	サインする
To design	デザインする	To cancel	キャンセルする

When する attaches to these words, it loses its literal meaning and places a grammatical function instead. In this sense, we say that it has become grammaticalized.

There are problematic restrictions on this usage of する. Even though きょうきゅう 供給 (supply) is the opposite of じゅうよう 需要 (demand), only 供給 can be followed by する. It turns out that verbal-like nouns get する verb forms, but others not so verbal don't. This lesson will investigate what exactly the patterns are to figuring this out. Particles are also confusing. Some nouns become verbalized by adding ～する, ～をする, ～にする, ～になる, a combination of these. This does not consider the particle to be used before the resultant verb phrase.

**Curriculum Note:** The level of this lesson is currently under evaluation. Once a decision has been made, reading aids will be added to suit the level chosen.

## Initial Problems

Our first problem is when to use ～をする. Many students learn about 練習（を）する (to practice ) and 勉強（を）する (to study). But, extending ～をする haphazardly to any する verb isn't smart. There are situations in which only ～する is right. In other situations, ～をする is obligatory. Thus, ～する would be ungrammatical. For other nouns, neither is correct and other means of making them verbal, if possible, must be used.

One thing you have to be careful of is grammatical context. These judgments are based for non-casual speech and when the phrase is used without any other attribute phrases. For instance, テニスする is used in casual speech because を is unconditionally dropped in casual speech.

To play tennis	テニス {をする ○・する △}	To play baseball	野球 {をする ○・する △}
To mean/imply	意味 {する ○・をする} X	To imply	含意 {する ○・をする X}
To consult	参考 {する X・をする X・に する ○}	To be in a daze	夢中 {する X・をする X・ になる ○}

**Clarification Note:** 意味をする may be used if you have ～という意味 or ～のような意味. However, the verb 意味する is not quite the same as just to define. Rather, it is more like to mean as in implication. You can't take this chart and run with it. Like always, be careful of understanding the entire picture. This includes knowing any nuance differences with familiar looking phrases. So, when we focus on this 意味する as a separate vocabulary word and try to insert a を, you would get を意味をする. It may also mean "to stand for", but this is still slightly different than ～という意味をする(○○).

**Particle Note:** Look how になる・する appear to save the day.

When the particle を is required, する is interpreted literally. This する is sometimes called a 重動詞 (heavy verb) in contrast to when it is just a grammatical item. Notice that the words that only take をする are specific activities: 強盗, テニス, 野球. Are these nouns then made verbs? No, they're obligatorily marked by を and are thus functioning as direct objects.

normal activity nouns that are broad in meaning such as 勉強 and 練習, we see that を is

optional. When を is used, these nouns usually have some sort of attribute, making them more specific.

1. 日本語の勉強をする。

To study Japanese.

Literally: To do Japanese studies.

For those that obligatorily only take する, they all represent a state/situation. More examples of these nouns include 刺殺 (stabbing to death), 集中 (concentration), 信用 (trust), 逆転 (reversal).

When する cannot be used at all, the noun lacks a strong verbal aspect. How do you know this? There must be certain conditions to look at. Ignoring set phrases that may break the rules, there are a set of tests to determine whether a noun has a high 動詞性 (verb nature) and can then take する.

## The Tests

These tests predict what nouns have verb forms. You already know what nouns that take する look like and come from. So, these tests are simply here to help you more definitively figure out whether a noun has one or not. However, if you don't understand why things are, you open yourself up to making unnecessary mistakes.

---

### Test 1: Aspect Modifier Test

Time phrases like “until” (まで) in Japanese set aspect limitations on verbs. They make verbs have a punctual end. If a noun is able to agree with these time phrases, it should have a high 動詞性 and thus have a verb form. When we do this test on the following native noun, it passes.

2. 明日までの仕上がり

合格: 動詞性が高い → V.P 明日までに仕上がる

Completion by tomorrow

To complete by tomorrow

If you were to replace 仕上がり with 本 or 部屋, which are both Sino-Japanese nouns, they fail. It turns out that there is no such thing as 本する or 部屋する, validating this test.

There is a drawback to this test. Noun forms of the verbs 痛む (to feel pain) and 信賴する (to trust/confide) come out negative. For these verbs, time parameters are not a part of their meanings. It's not correct Japanese to say something like 夜間以内の痛み (pain within night time). 夜に痛む is fine, though. We've just hit a separate roadblock in the meaning of these words.

normal

This test enables us in theory to prove that nouns with a temporal end implied should have verb forms. So, in dealing with such 漢語名詞, they should have する verb forms.

3. 完了 (Completion) → 完了する ○ 完成 (Completion/perfection) → 完成する  
4. 計算 (Calculation) → 計算する ○ 算数 (arithmetic) → 算数する X/△

---

### Test 2: Aspect Ending Test

Nouns that describe a コト (event) and can then be followed by time endings such as ～後 (after) ～中 (under/during) should have verb forms. This test is immediately problematic because some words that can be used with one such ending can't be used with another. All of these words, though, can take ～中. So, according to the test, they should be able to take する, and they do.

採用	Adoption (of something)	活動	Activity
研究	Research	募集	Recruitment
建設	Construction	仮眠	Doze

Like the last test, this test shows that nouns that express モノ cannot have verb forms. However, it accidentally invalidates nouns with verb forms that can't take both ～後 and ～中 for other reasons. Such nouns include 感動 (feeling/movement), 緊張 (nervousness), 静止 (stillness), 信用 (trust/faith), 信賴. They express particular states that can't be viewed as having exact beginnings, midpoints, or ends.

---

### Test 3: State Aspect Test

Nouns such as 痛み represent states. However, the state unlike that of a building has the potential of changing over time. In this sense, such nouns are more verb-like. When we use 一時的な (temporary), we can quickly eliminate many nouns that can't take する.

5. 一時的な {緊張 ○・保存 (Preservation) ○・在庫 (Stock (supply)) ○・健康 (health) X・精神 (spirit/mind) X}

Words like 健康 and 精神 also fail previous aspect tenses. They have no salient relation with time. Although nouns like 緊張, 混乱 (chaos), and 流行 (fashion/trend) may not necessarily have defined time frames, these stages are subject to change, and change takes time.

---

### Test 4: Intent/State of Action with Adjective Modifiers Test

There are still some する verbs not accounted for. For nouns with which intention and state can be expressed with an adjectival modifier, it is more verb-like and should take する. Those that can't show intention in this way are less verb-like and shouldn't take する.

- 6a. 彼女は一生懸命に調査を行ないました。○  
6b. 彼女は一生懸命な調査を行ないました。○

Though slightly different, we know that she carried out a full-hearted investigation. We know her intent and state of action. So, 調査する should be a possible verb form of 調査, which it is.

Let's look at similar noun pairs in which one can take する and one can't. So, one can take certain intent/state adjectival phrases but the other cannot. If one can't, it shouldn't take する.

- |                        |   |                     |   |               |   |               |   |
|------------------------|---|---------------------|---|---------------|---|---------------|---|
| 7. 意識的な参考              | × | 意識的な参照              | ○ | 異常な熱中         | ○ | 異常な夢中         | × |
| Conscious consultation |   | Conscious reference |   | Abnormal zeal |   | Abnormal daze |   |

Nouns with Xs don't have する verb forms, thus validating the test. Though in English verb forms of these word aren't bad, if intent/volition isn't in the noun in Japanese, the noun fails the test. This is why 需要 doesn't have a する verb form. It fails this test.

This test is great for nouns that would have transitive verb form. It doesn't work for intransitive verbs, which have no volition. In which case, you would use the previous tests.

---

### Final Comments

With these four tests, you should be able to correctly assume whether a noun can take する or not. Beware of influence from your native language(s) that may make you accidentally say things like 独立になる, which should be 独立する (to become independent). Independence like marriage presumably lasts for some time. 独立 along with 結婚, 安心, etc. pass Test 3 and thus have する verbs. If a noun fails this test, ~になる, ~にする, or both might be used instead.

As final examples, consider 瀕死 (to become moribund) and 中毒 (intoxication/poisoning). 瀕死する fails all tests. When verbal, you say 瀕死になる, as expected. Both 瀕死 and 中毒 don't make sense with “temporary”. They describe things that simply happen/come to be. It would be weird to say that something was moribund for several days or someone was intoxicated for two hours.

**Word Note:** 中毒する does exist in the transitive sense of “to poison”, which then passes

**Particle Note:** The particle used before the する verb is determined by the semantics of the verb phrase itself. This is not the topic of this lesson. The topic of this lesson is what sort of nouns become する verbs and which ones need を.

For instance, を敬礼する is ungrammatical because the する verb 敬礼する means "to salute", and because you "salute to something", you use the particle に with it. Though not using "to" is alright in English, this is not English, so you are going to have to consider how 敬礼する is used and not assume it's like its English equivalents.

## Examples

After a long time studying grammar, we will end this section with example sentences with even more する verbs. Though not part of the exercises, try to figure out which tests these verbs passed to be acceptable.

8. 今晚、予約したスミスです。  
I am Smith with a reservation for tonight.

9. 日本に留学します。  
I will study abroad in Japan.

10. 会議を休止する。  
To adjourn/pause a meeting.

11. 会う約束をキャンセルする。  
To cancel an appointment.

## Different Kinds of する Verbs

Long time ago, する was す. After certain words, it was voiced as ず, which changed to the interchangeable 〜じる・ずる that differ only in speech style and conjugation. The tests taught in this lesson still work for these verbs. Only their conjugations are tricky.

〜ずる came before 〜じる, but the latter is more common. 〜ずる is mainly found in literature, but because they do occasionally show up, you at least need to know that you are looking at a form of する and that it has a more modern equivalent, 〜じる.

	みぜんけ	れんようけ	しゅうしけ	れんたいけ	いぜんけ	めいれいけ
	い	い	い	い	い	い

～じ る	じ-	じ-	じる	じる-	じれ-	じろ・じよ
～ずる	ぜ・じ-	じ-	ず（る）	ずる-	ずれ-	ぜよ

**Base Note:** Like する, ぜ is used with older endings. So, you don't need to know it now.

Another sound change with する occurs when it attaches to single character Sino-Japanese nouns that end in つ. This つ, then, subsequently contracts to っ. The chart below illustrates the bases of 発<sup>はっ</sup>する (to emit).

動詞	みぜんけい	れんようけ い	しゅうしけ い	れんたいけ い	いぜんけ い	めいれいけ い
発す る	発し・発せ・発 さ-	発し-	発す（る）	発する-	発すれ-	しろ・せよ

**Base Note:** し- takes ～ない and the volitional as expected, but さ- can also take ～ない aside from being used with the passive and causative. せ-, is of course used with older endings that you should not worry about at this point. It's just that if you see する verbs in these forms and see that the vowel in the base has changed to an “e”, you at least know what base you’re looking at. This alone can help you know what the ending is being used for.

### More Examples

To emit	発する	To presume	察する	To believe	信 {じる・ず る}
To feel; sense	感 {じる・ず る}	To anticipate	先ん {じる・ず る}	To value	重ん {じる・ず る}
To memorize	諳ん {じる・ず る}				

**Word Note:** Notice that じる・ずる do not only follow Sino-Japanese words. When following native words, the native root is followed by ん, which then じる・ずる follows.

## 第180課: Nouns → Verbs with する

normal



Numerous verbs are made with する attached to nouns. する is primarily seen after かんごめいし 漢語名詞, nouns that are Sino-Japanese (Chinese based) in origin or composition, for this. However, する is not limited to these nouns. It is also seen after native words and recent loanwords.

To study	勉強する	To buy and sell	売買する
To eat and drink	飲食する	To point out	指図する
To oversleep	寝坊する	To exchange (money)	両替する
To love (sexual relation)	恋する	To sweat	汗する
To copy	コピーする	To sign	サインする
To design	デザインする	To cancel	キャンセルする

When する attaches to these words, it loses its literal meaning and places a grammatical function instead. In this sense, we say that it has become grammaticalized.

There are problematic restrictions on this usage of する. Even though きょうきゅう 供給 (supply) is the opposite of じゅうよう 需要 (demand), only 供給 can be followed by する. It turns out that verbal-like nouns get する verb forms, but others not so verbal don't. This lesson will investigate what exactly the patterns are to figuring this out. Particles are also confusing. Some nouns become verbalized by adding ～する, ～をする, ～にする, ～になる, a combination of these. This does not consider the particle to be used before the resultant verb phrase.

**Curriculum Note:** The level of this lesson is currently under evaluation. Once a decision has been made, reading aids will be added to suit the level chosen.

## Initial Problems

Our first problem is when to use ～をする. Many students learn about 練習 (を) する (to practice) and 勉強 (を) する (to study). But, extending ～をする haphazardly to any する verb isn't smart. There are situations in which only ～する is right. In other situations, ～をする is obligatory. Thus, ～する would be ungrammatical. For other nouns, neither is correct and other means of making them verbal, if possible, must be used.

One thing you have to be careful of is grammatical context. These judgments are based for non-casual speech and when the phrase is used without any other attribute phrases. For instance, テニスする is used in casual speech because を is unconditionally dropped in casual speech.

To play tennis	テニス {ををする ○・する △}	To play baseball	野球 {ををする ○・する △}
To mean/imply	意味 {する ○・ををする} X	To imply	含意 {する ○・ををする X}
To consult	参考 {する X・ををする X・に する ○}	To be in a daze	夢中 {する X・ををする X・ になる ○}

**Clarification Note:** 意味をする may be used if you have ～という意味 or ～のような意味. However, the verb 意味する is not quite the same as just to define. Rather, it is more like to mean as in implication. You can't take this chart and run with it. Like always, be careful of understanding the entire picture. This includes knowing any nuance differences with familiar looking phrases. So, when we focus on this 意味する as a separate vocabulary word and try to insert a を, you would get を意味をする. It may also mean "to stand for", but this is still slightly different than ～という意味をする(○○).

**Particle Note:** Look how になる・する appear to save the day.

When the particle を is required, する is interpreted literally. This する is sometimes called a 重動詞 (heavy verb) in contrast to when it is just a grammatical item. Notice that the words that only take をする are specific activities: 強盗, テニス, 野球. Are these nouns then made verbs? No, they're obligatorily marked by を and are thus functioning as direct objects.

For activity nouns that are broad in meaning such as 勉強 and 練習, we see that を is optional. When を is used, these nouns usually have some sort of attribute, making them more specific.

#### 1. 日本語の勉強をする。

To study Japanese.

Literally: To do Japanese studies.

For those that obligatorily only take する, they all represent a state/situation. More examples of these nouns include 刺殺 (stabbing to death), 集中 (concentration), 信用 (trust), 逆転 (reversal).

When する cannot be used at all, the noun lacks a strong verbal aspect. How do you know this? There must be certain conditions to look at. Ignoring set phrases that may break the rules, there are a set of tests to determine whether a noun has a high 動詞性 (verb nature) and can then take する.

## The Tests

These tests predict what nouns have verb forms. You already know what nouns that take する look like and come from. So, these tests are simply here to help you more definitively figure out whether a noun has one or not. However, if you don't understand why things are, you open yourself up to making unnecessary mistakes.

### Test 1: Aspect Modifier Test

Time phrases like “until” (まで) in Japanese set aspect limitations on verbs. They make verbs have a punctual end. If a noun is able to agree with these time phrases, it should have a high 動詞性 and thus have a verb form. When we do this test on the following native noun, it passes.

2. 明日までの仕上がり      合格: 動詞性が高い → V.P 明日までに仕上がる  
Completion by tomorrow                          To complete by tomorrow

If you were to replace 仕上がり with 本 or 部屋, which are both Sino-Japanese nouns, they fail. It turns out that there is no such thing as 本する or 部屋する, validating this test.

There is a drawback to this test. Noun forms of the verbs 痛む (to feel pain) and 信頼する (to trust/confide) come out negative. For these verbs, time parameters are not a part of their meanings. It's not correct Japanese to say something like 夜間以内の痛み (pain within night time). 夜に痛む is fine, though. We've just hit a separate roadblock in the meaning of these words.

This test enables us in theory to prove that nouns with a temporal end implied should have verb forms. So, in dealing with such 漢語名詞, they should have する verb forms.

3. 完了 (Completion) → 完了する ○ 完成 (Completion/perfection) → 完成する

4. 計算 (Calculation) → 計算する ○ 算数 (arithmetic) → 算数する  $\times/\wedge$

## Test 2: Aspect Ending Test

Nouns that describe a コト (event) and can then be followed by time endings such as ～後 (after) ～中 (under/during) should have verb forms. This test is immediately problematic because some words that can be used with one such ending can't be used with another. All of these words, though, can take ～中. So, according to the test, they should be able to take する, and they do.

採用	Adoption (of something)	活動	Activity
研究	Research	募集	Recruitment
建設	Construction	仮眠	Doze

Like the last test, this test shows that nouns that express モノ cannot have verb forms. However, it accidentally invalidates nouns with verb forms that can't take both ～後 and ～中 for other reasons. Such nouns include 感動 (feeling/movement), 緊張 (nervousness), 静止 (stillness), 信用 (trust/faith), 信賴. They express particular states that can't be viewed as having exact beginnings, midpoints, or ends.

---

### **Test 3: State Aspect Test**

Nouns such as 痛み represent states. However, the state unlike that of a building has the potential of changing over time. In this sense, such nouns are more verb-like. When we use 一時的な (temporary), we can quickly eliminate many nouns that can't take する.

5. 一時的な {緊張 ○・保存 (Preservation) ○・在庫 (Stock (supply)) ○・健康 (health) X・精神 (spirit/mind) X}

Words like 健康 and 精神 also fail previous aspect tenses. They have no salient relation with time. Although nouns like 緊張, 混乱 (chaos), and 流行 (fashion/trend) may not necessarily have defined time frames, these stages are subject to change, and change takes time.

---

### **Test 4: Intent/State of Action with Adjective Modifiers Test**

There are still some する verbs not accounted for. For nouns with which intention and state can be expressed with an adjectival modifier, it is more verb-like and should take する. Those that can't show intention in this way are less verb-like and shouldn't take する.

- 6a. 彼女は一生懸命に調査を行ないました。○  
 6b. 彼女は一生懸命な調査を行ないました。○

Though slightly different, we know that she carried out a full-hearted investigation. We know her intent and state of action. So, 調査する should be a possible verb form of 調査, which it is.

Let's look at similar noun pairs in which one can take する and one can't. So, one can take certain intent/state adjectival phrases but the other cannot. If one can't, it shouldn't take する

る.

7. 意識的な参考 X      意識的な参照 O      異常な熱中 O      異常な夢中 X  
Conscious consultation    Conscious reference    Abnormal zeal    Abnormal daze

Nouns with Xs don't have する verb forms, thus validating the test. Though in English verb forms of these word aren't bad, if intent/volition isn't in the noun in Japanese, the noun fails the test. This is why 需要 doesn't have a する verb form. It fails this test.

This test is great for nouns that would have transitive verb form. It doesn't work for intransitive verbs, which have no volition. In which case, you would use the previous tests.

---

### Final Comments

With these four tests, you should be able to correctly assume whether a noun can take する or not. Beware of influence from your native language(s) that may make you accidentally say things like 独立になる, which should be 独立する (to become independent). Independence like marriage presumably lasts for some time. 独立 along with 結婚, 安心, etc. pass Test 3 and thus have する verbs. If a noun fails this test, ~になる, ~にする, or both might be used instead.

As final examples, consider 瀕死 (to become moribund) and 中毒 (intoxication/poisoning). 瀕死する fails all tests. When verbal, you say 瀕死になる, as expected. Both 瀕死 and 中毒 don't make sense with "temporary". They describe things that simply happen/come to be. It would be weird to say that something was moribund for several days or someone was intoxicated for two hours.

**Word Note:** 中毒する does exist in the transitive sense of "to poison", which then passes Test 4.

**Particle Note:** The particle used before the する verb is determined by the semantics of the verb phrase itself. This is not the topic of this lesson. The topic of this lesson is what sort of nouns become する verbs and which ones need を.

For instance, を敬礼する is ungrammatical because the する verb 敬礼する means "to salute", and because you "salute to something", you use the particle に with it. Though not using "to" is alright in English, this is not English, so you are going to have to consider how 敬礼する is used and not assume it's like its English equivalents.

## Examples

After normal a long time studying grammar, we will end this section with example sentences with

even more する verbs. Though not part of the exercises, try to figure out which tests these verbs passed to be acceptable.

8. 今晚、予約したスミスです。  
I am Smith with a reservation for tonight.

9. 日本に留学します。  
I will study abroad in Japan.

10. 会議を休止する。  
To adjourn/pause a meeting.

11. 会う約束をキャンセルする。  
To cancel an appointment.

## Different Kinds of する Verbs

Long time ago, する was す. After certain words, it was voiced as ず, which changed to the interchangeable ~じる・ずる that differ only in speech style and conjugation. The tests taught in this lesson still work for these verbs. Only their conjugations are tricky.

~ずる came before ~じる, but the latter is more common. ~ずる is mainly found in literature, but because they do occasionally show up, you at least need to know that you are looking at a form of する and that it has a more modern equivalent, ~じる.

	みぜんけ い	れんようけ い	しゅうしけ い	れんたいけ い	いぜんけ い	めいれいけ い
~じる る	じ-	じ-	じる	じる-	じれ-	じろ・じよ
~ずる	ぜ・じ-	じ-	ず (る)	ずる-	ずれ-	ぜよ

**Base Note:** Like する, ぜ is used with older endings. So, you don't need to know it now.

Another sound change with する occurs when it attaches to single character Sino-Japanese nouns that end in つ. This つ, then, subsequently contracts to っ. The chart below illustrates the bases of 発する (to emit).

動詞 normal	みぜんけい	れんようけ	しゅうしけ	れんたいけ	いぜんけ	めいれいけ
--------------	-------	-------	-------	-------	------	-------

		い	い	い	い	い
発する	発し・発せ・発さ-	発し-	発す（る）	発する-	発すれ-	しろ・せよ

**Base Note:** し- takes ～ない and the volitional as expected, but さ- can also take ～ない aside from being used with the passive and causative. せ-, is of course used with older endings that you should not worry about at this point. It's just that if you see する verbs in these forms and see that the vowel in the base has changed to an “e”, you at least know what base you're looking at. This alone can help you know what the ending is being used for.

### More Examples

To emit	発する	To presume	察する	To believe	信 {じる・ずる}
To feel; sense	感 {じる・ずる}	To anticipate	先ん {じる・ずる}	To value	重ん {じる・ずる}
To memorize	諳ん {じる・ずる}				

**Word Note:** Notice that じる・ずる do not only follow Sino-Japanese words. When following native words, the native root is followed by ん, which then じる・ずる follows.

## 第182課: About: ～について, ～に関して, & ～をめぐって

It normally doesn't take long to find differences between similar items in Japanese. Sometimes there might be certain forms and meanings of one that the other doesn't have, or there could be formality differences. These are the kinds of differences that you will learn about in regards to ～について, ～に関して, and ～をめぐって in this lesson.

### ～について & ～に関して

You have no doubt come across ～について and ～に関して and noticed that each time that they were both translated as “about”. Although this is quite true, most students don't understand the differences between them, when and when not to attach は, and how to choose an appropriate 連体形 (attribute form).

normal consider the following mistakes and corrections.

- 1a. 今から韓国に関して話してください。X  
1b. 今から韓国について話してください。○  
From now talk about Korea.

2.

- A: 田山さんは家事はやりですか。  
B: いえ、家事について、家内任せです。X  
B: いえ、家事については、家内任せです。○  
A: Does Mr. Tayama do housework?  
B: No, in regards to housework, he leaves it up to his wife.

The fundamental usage of ～について and ～に関して is to emphasize an event/person as the topic/theme. Then, one states something about it. These phrases are also common in forming questions in this manner.

- ぼしんせんそう  
3. 戊辰戦争について教えていただけませんか。  
Could you teach me about the Boshin War?

- ぼうえき  
4. 彼らは貿易に関して議論した。  
They argued about trade.

Whereas ～について emphasizes the content at hand, ～に関して includes the surroundings related to it. Also, as ～について comes from the verb 付く, it is used a lot when referring to things being tied to acts of communication via speaking, writing, thinking, etc. As you might gather just from the few examples thus far, ～に関して is more formal and stiff. Given its nuance and formality, you should see why it was wrong in the first example.

5. 駐車違反取締り {○ についての・X に関しての} お知らせ  
Notice about the management of parking violations  
6. 説明会のタイトルは水不足の問題 {○ について・X に関して} です。  
The title of this information session is about the water shortage problem.

Given the defining difference between the two, which do you suppose would be used when a student is giving a speech about his/her home country? The answer is ～について. In fact, ～について is used in the introduction of speeches because you are telling the listeners what your speech is going to be about, not what your speech/content of speech has relation with. Individual examples might be related with something else, but that's not your introduction either.



「皆さん、こんにちは。私たちのインタビュープロジェクトのトピックは敬語です。私たちは日本の方に色々な敬語についての質問をしてみたかったので、今回日本人の敬語の考え方をテーマにして発表することにしました。インタビューした人のうち、13人が女性で、8人が男性でした。大体皆さんは若者でした。たった2人だけが35歳以上でした。主婦が8人いて、大学生が6人いて、大学院生が4人いて、仕事をしている人が4人いました。

最初に聞いてみた2つの質問は、敬語学習の時期<sup>じ き</sup>についてです。...

日本人の敬語の考え方についていくつか質問しました。その中で私たちが思っていたのと違った答えだったのは、「敬語はフェイクで、敬語を使わなかったら、人ともっと近くなれる」というのでした。日本人がすべて「敬語が必要だ」という主張<sup>しゅちょう いっち</sup>に一致していないのにとってもびっくりしました。何故現代の日本社会で敬語が必要なのかは、文化と習慣からだけだというわけではなくて、誠に尊敬の意を表している日本人の心を代表としていると思います。言語は時代と共<sup>とも</sup>に変わるにもかかわらず、言葉遣い<sup>ことばづか</sup>に気をつけないと、「日本人じゃない」と思われてしまうこともこの発表の結果を考えると、お分かりいただけるでしょう。敬語の使い方は日本人自身にとっても難しいけれど、この先もずっと大切に使われるであろうと言えるかもしれません。これで、敬語についての発表を終わります。」

1. What were the demographics of the Japanese people interviewed?
2. How many people were college students?
3. What were the first two questions about?
4. What is the attribute form of について?
5. What was the most surprising response?
6. Language changes with time, but what must you always pay attention to?
7. Translate the last two sentences.
8. True or False: 敬語 is thought to be part of Japanese culture and tradition according to the findings of this speech.

---

In explanation these phrases are essentially interchangeable. The same kinds of words are used with them, and as far as the kinds of sentences they appear in, they're essentially parallel. So, what mainly causes problems is formality and the nuance difference mentioned earlier.

- 人種差別主義<sup>じんしゅさべつしゅぎ</sup>に {ついて・関して} の問題は重大です。

The problem against racism is serious.

- 自由と圧制<sup>あつせい</sup>について考察する。

To inquire about freedom and oppression.

normal

9. 彼女の顔についていえば、本当に美しいですね。  
Starting with her look, she's really beautiful, isn't she?

**Variant Usage:** Although not related, ～につき (a variant which will be mentioned again) and ～について may also mean "per" with numerical phrases. Lastly, ～につき may be like ～ため to show reasoning in formal situations where it is typically written in 漢字 as ～に就き.

10. 雪<sup>ゆき</sup>崩<sup>なだれ</sup>に就<sup>つ</sup>き電車<sup>ふつう</sup>は不通です。  
Train (service) is suspended due to an avalanche.
11. 牛肉は今一ポンドにつき6ドルだよ。  
Meat is six dollars per pound now.
12. 千円につき50円の手<sup>て</sup>数<sup>すう</sup>料<sup>りょう</sup>がかかります。  
There is a fifty yen handling fee per one thousand yen.

---

### ～については・に関しては

は is added, as one would imagine, to raise something as the topic or thing of contrast.

13.

- A: 秘書がお金を受け取ったんでしょう。  
B: そのこと {については・に関しては}、私は何も知りません。  
A: Didn't the secretary receive the money?  
B: I don't know anything about that.

14. 男性であるか女性であるか、年齢はどうかなど {については・に関しては}、それほど重要ではありません。  
Whether it be about them being male or female or their age, it's not that important.

---

### Formality

You can also find these expressions as ～につきまして and ～に関しまして in more polite settings.

15. ご質問につきましてお答えします。(謙譲語)  
I will answer concerning your question.

16. この前の照<sup>しょう</sup>会<sup>かい</sup>に関しまして (Very Formal)

normal regarding your recent inquiry

**Variant Note:** について can also be seen as につき in very formal writing.

---

### Attribute Forms

～についての is the attribute form of ～について. As for ～に関して, it has the attribute forms ～に関しての and ～に関する, with the latter being more literary.

17. 政府<sup>とうろん</sup>に関しての討論。

A debate about the government.

18. 平和に関する北朝鮮<sup>ぎわく</sup>の疑惑<sup>ぼうえい</sup>は日本<sup>きょうい</sup>の防衛<sup>さら</sup>を脅威に晒している。  
North Korean doubts on peace is threatening Japanese security.

19. 平和に関する会合を開く。

To hold a meeting concerning peace.

**Meaning Note:** ～に関する and ～に関わる have overlapping meanings of "concerning/related to X". The first shows a connection, but the other shows a direct effect.

---

### A+の+連体形+の

In this pattern it moreover limits something in noting a condition about what is expressed by the noun. It's very similar to ～<sup>かん</sup>に関して.

20. コーヒー<sup>さ</sup>の冷めたの

Cold in regards to coffee

21. コーヒーに関して<sup>かん</sup>は冷たい。

It's cold in relation to coffee.

22. オレンジ<sup>こぶ</sup>の小振りなの

A comparatively small orange

**Meaning Note:** The word 小振り is normally only used in reference to things like fruits, fish, etc. However, its usage may be expanded some in speaking. Nevertheless, something like 小振りなテレビ is very weird. You should use 小型<sup>こがた</sup>のテレビ instead.

～をめぐって・めぐり

～を巡って, also seen as ～を巡り in more stiff, literary language, is typically written with 巡, but this is important in understanding its usage. There are some instances where it is used in a more literal sense of passing through places.

23. 四国四十八ヶ所<sup>めいしよきゅうせき</sup>の名所旧跡を巡る。

To pass through the 48 famous landmarks of Shikoku.

24. 僕は被災地<sup>ひさいち</sup>を巡るつもりだ。

I plan to go around the devastated area.

25. 鎌倉の古寺を巡ろう。

Let's go through the Kamakura temples!

26. 名月や池を巡りて夜もすがら

Going about the full moon and lakes, all night.

From 芭蕉<sup>ばしやう</sup>.

**Conjugation Note:** 巡りて is the Classical form of 巡って.

It can also be used in the sense of something that had gone away has returned. In this sense, it can also be written as 廻る.

27. 季節が巡る。

Seasons return.

28a. 血液が体内を巡るのは生きるために必要だ。

28b. 血液が体内を巡らなければ、生きることができない。

Blood returning through the body is necessary in order to be able to live.

29. 悪運が日本に巡ってきたようだ。

It looks like bad luck has reached Japan.

However, what will be used the most with 巡る here concerns the meaning of "surrounding" some X and describing its condition. This is translated as "concerning". In a sense you are surrounding something in an interest and describing it. One grammatical issue is that the attribute form can only be ～を巡っての when the following noun phrase Y concerns a situation and not a person. This restriction does not exist for the attribute form ～を巡った.

30. ジュリエットを巡る恋敵<sup>こいがたき</sup>だよ。

They are rivals concerning Juliet.

normal

31. 城の周りを巡れ！  
Enclose the surroundings of the castle!
32. アメリカでは憲法を巡る問題が重なっています。  
There are problems concerning the Constitution building up in America.
33. 資金を巡って政府は暗礁に乗り上げてしまいました。  
(The government) reached a deadlock concerning government funds.

---

### ～を巡って VS ～について・に関して

Although largely interchangeable, since ～を巡って is coming from the speaker's perspective as an onlooker, when one is actually a person concerned with something, ～について・に関して should be used instead.

34. 日本の将来 {を巡って・について}、有識者による討論会が行われました。  
There was a debate opened by experts concerning the future of Japan.
35. 健康保険 {○ について・X を巡って}、論議を進めたいと思います。  
I would like to proceed with an argument/discussion about health insurance.
36. 来年の企画 {○ について・○ に関して・X をめぐって} 話し合ってください。  
Please talk together about next year's project.

## 第183課: The Particle しも

This particle is very limited in use, but it is not that difficult.

### The Adverbial Particle しも

しも is essentially an emphatic し. However, its use in a sentence reflects a more productive use of し itself. Though we often see し in the spoken language today, the particle has existed for a long time, and the combination of the emphatic し and emphatic も has been around just as long. Although しも has survived along with し, its usage is primarily restricted to the following phrases. Notice how it is designated to nominal (or nominalized) phrases or after adverbial phrases.

Aside from the last phrase 折しも, all of these phrases are used in negative sentences. This just goes to show you how many restrictions are on its use, and it's no surprise that most of the phrases are most frequently used in 書き言葉.

誰しも	Everyone, anyone (very emphatic)	～ならまだしも	It's one thing, but...
必ずしも	Not necessarily	～なきにしもあらず	It's not to say that...won't
折しも	Just then		

**Phrase Note:** かならずしも is often paired with ～とは限らない ending the sentence.

**Speech Style Note:** ～なきにしもあらず and 折しも are especially 書き言葉.

**Variant Note:** A rarer variant of 折しも is 時しも. This essentially does not show up in Modern Japanese works, but it does show up sometimes in Early Modern Japanese works. Meaning wise, 折 and 時 mean the same thing here.

1. 誰しも地獄へ落ちるのは怖い。

Everyone is afraid of going to hell.

2. 勢力はそれ自体では必ずしも幸福をもたらすとは限らない。

Power, in itself, doesn't necessarily bring happiness.

3. 折しも、地震が起きました。

Just at that time, the earthquake occurred.

4. 折しも、雪崩が発生し、登山者の二人は行方不明となった。依然として行方不明のままである。

Just then, the avalanche was sparked, and the two mountain climbers went missing. They are still to this moment unaccounted for.

### ～ならまだしも

This phrase can be used after nouns, verbs, and adjectives. For verbs and adjectives, you attach it to the 終止形. For 形容動詞, simply add after the stem.

5. 1日か2つかならまだしも、10日も無断欠勤だなんて、許されないものだし、非常識だ。  
It's one thing to be 1 or 2 days, but an over ten day unexcused leave is intolerable and against common sense.

6. 新鮮ならまだしも、変色して黒ずんでいる果物を誰が買うものなのか。

Being fresh is one thing, but who would ever buy fruit that's discolored and black?

7. 日本語ならまだしも、英語なんて全く全然分らないよ。  
Japanese is one thing, but I absolutely don't understand English at all!
8. 寒いだけならまだしも、お腹が空いてきた。  
If it were just cold, that would be one thing, but I've gotten hungry.
9. 事情を説明しに来るならまだしも、顔さえ見せない。  
Coming to explain the situation is one thing, but (he) won't even show his face.
10. 一度ならまだしも、ここまで10回までその言葉を間違えて書いたんですよ。  
Once is fine, but you've written the word incorrectly ten times now.
11. まだしも死んだ方が良い。  
It would be best to just die.

---

### ～なきにしもあらず

This is a double negative phrase which functions as a positive expression, and it ultimately has the meaning of 有り得る. Although it is a predicate phrase, it is still followed by the copula. Remember thatしも is here to show emphasis (強調). It is seldom used in the spoken language, but it can still show up.

12. あの子はまだ望みはなきにしもあらずだ。  
It's not to say that the kid doesn't have (any) hope.
13. 台風が接近しているので、雨が降る事もなきにしもあらずなので、傘をお忘れなく。  
The typhoon is approaching, so don't forget your umbrella because it's not like it couldn't rain.
14. 急にカメラが壊れることもなきにしもあらずですよ。  
It's not to say that your camera won't suddenly break down.
15. 後数分で事故などで死ぬ事もなきにしもあらずだからだ。  
That's because it's not the case that you won't die in an accident or something a few minutes later.

---

### With Other Particles?

normal 我々は縁側で将棋に興じている。街路樹のプラタナスの葉ずれ。ああいうのをしも、

人間の文化といわずして、何というのだろうか。

The men are amusing themselves with shogi on the veranda while plane trees rustle on the sides of the road. What would you call this if not human culture?

By 田辺聖子 in 古川柳おちぼひろい.

**Grammar Note:** The particle しも used to be more versatile in the past. In the example above, the particle is used after を. This is very rare now, but it is not ungrammatical.

### 必ず VS きっと VS 絶対(に)

So, given that you have now seen these three similar words for quite a while, you're probably wondering how they're different. There is overlap. So, focus not only on the differences but also the commonalities.

#### きっと:

- Based on observation, the probability of something happening is high. It may show strong determination or show strong will towards the listener(s). It is like "surely". It may be seen at the beginning, middle, or at the end of a sentence.
- It can also mean "certainly", synonymous with 確かに and 疑いなく. Therefore it isn't used in a question. In a command it is like "without fail", just like 必ず.
- きっと...する = "to be sure to...".
- きっと...だ = "have to be"
- きっと...に<sup>ちが</sup>違いない = "must be...".

It can also show sternness.

#### 必ず:

- Without a doubt, something will be done or happen. It is far more firm. Probability is 100%. It is like "always", and in meaning so it makes a general noun the subject.
- It can mean "surely" just like きっと and be seen in the same locations in the sentence.
- 必ずや is an even more emphatic form.
- "Necessarily" as in something is inevitable, interchangeable with 必然的<sup>ひつぜんてき</sup>に.
- In a command, it means "by all means/without fail".
- Some commands with the pattern 必ず...する may mean "be sure to/make certain".
- 必ずしも～ない completely negates something and is equivalent to 絶対そう...とは限らない.
- 必ず is much more serious than きっと despite that they're used in similar

normal

environments.



## 絶対（に）：

- No matter what
- Positively/definitely
- With the negative it means "never".
- It is often used with phrases that mean "must", "will" and "would" to be similar to "on not account", clearly in a negative sentence.
- Unlike the others, it is more constructive and can be used as a noun and used as an attribute as 絶対の・絶対的な<sup>ぜったいてき</sup> to mean "absolute/indispensable".

Some of these things feature grammar points that we haven't studied yet, but you should know the overall usage of these three words.

17. 絶対に確信<sup>かくしん</sup>があります。  
I'm absolutely sure.

18. 絶対にそうだ。  
There's no doubt about it.

19. 絶対零度を測定する  
To record absolute zero

20. 彼女は必ずしも忙しくない。  
She's not always busy.

21. 戦争は必ず起こる。  
War will inevitably occur.

22. 必ず約束<sup>やくそく</sup>を守って<sup>まも</sup>ください。  
Do not fail to keep your word/promise.

23. 明日中にはきっと<sup>うかが</sup>伺います。  
I will certainly come sometime tomorrow.

24. 絶対的な権力<sup>けんりょく</sup>を握る。  
To grab absolute power

25. 僕らはきっと勝つ。  
We will surely win.

26. きっとだ、間違い<sup>まちが</sup>ない。  
I'll be bound.

27. それは絶対だめだよ。

That'll never do.

28. そんなことを絶対にしてはいけません。

You must never do something like that.

## 第191課: Pronouns III: 再帰代名詞

Japanese 再帰代名詞 *equate* to English "reflexive pronouns". However, unlike the reflexive pronouns of English and other European languages, these Japanese words are far more complex. Usages vary and are heavily reliant on context for correct interpretation.

The first problem that you have to come to grips with is the sheer number of "reflexive pronouns" in Japanese: 自分、自分自身、自身、自己、自体、自ら、自ずから、己、and 各々. Though this list may appear exhaustive, it does not include words with reflexive elements in them or dialectical variants.

**漢字 Note:** There are other words with 自- with a meaning of "own". Ex. 自宅 = "One's house".

### 自分(じぶん)

自分 causes linguists on both sides of the Pacific to constantly write on the so-called long-distance reflexive pronouns of Japanese. If you ever look into this matter in greater academic depth, this term will come up. However, even without any linguistic knowledge, with what is to be discussed, this term will inevitably hone things together in your mind.

---

#### Source of Confusion

自分 has **no exact** English equivalent. Most textbooks say it means "(one)self", "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "themselves", "itself", etc. depending on context. This, though, is oversimplified. How do you know which is meant with just **a** sentence? What if there are multiple things 自分 could refer to?

This is where long-distance reflexive properties and knowledge of clause structures and particles come into play. For starters, consider the following sentence:

1a. 自分が馬鹿者だって知らないんだ。

From an English perspective where an anaphor, a "-self" word, must have an antecedent (something before them) to refer to, 自分 having no subject to refer to and being marked by が as the subject is problematic! As, additional information can be easily dropped in a

normal

Japanese sentence, long-distance co-referencing comes into play.

自分 can refer to a subject mentioned earlier. In the alteration of the prevision example, it is clear that 自分 = 彼女ら自身 (they themselves).

1b. 彼女らは自分が馬鹿者だって知らないんだ。

---

### **Scenarios with Multiple Potential Readings**

There are some cases where you need the full discourse to conclude the meaning of 自分. Even with context, in sentences such as below, there really are multiple, variable readings that you can derive and not be wrong. In such situations, even for native speakers, explaining may be the only way to negate ambiguity as seen below.

2. 岸田さんは、「小田原さんが『自分は頭がいい』と言った」と言った。

It could be that Odawara was referring to Kishida. Or, he could have been just talking about himself. Regardless of what you think is the most probable interpretation, without any other information, it's not certain.

---

### **Single Interpretation Scenarios**

Consider the following with only one possible interpretation. Regardless whether there is ambiguity in what 自分 refers to or not or how long the sentence is, it still refers to something specific.

3. 畑中先生は憲太にとって自分の親のような存在だった。

Hatanaka Sensei was to Kenta like his own parent.

4. 清美は、実際としては、春彦に何を白状させたというのではなく、ただ自分の推測でものを言っているだけだ。

As for Kiyomi, it's not what did she make Haruhiko confess; it's just her own conjecture.

In Ex. 3, 畑中先生 is still the topic. She has an existence of [憲太にとって自分の親のような]. We know that 自分 doesn't refer to her because にとって provides an explanatory sense to the situation, negating the other possible reference, 憲太. Without 憲太にとって, 自分 would refer to 畑中先生.

In Ex. 4, 自分 refers to 清美. This is because [春彦から何を白状させたという] is embedded in the nominal phrase marked by の, which could be replaced by any other noun phrase you'd like.

normal

---

## Unlikely Ambiguous Scenarios

In this final example, it would be odd for the command to be for the listener to retrospect on what the *speaker* has done. However, this reading could exist given enough context. However, if this is all that is said, you can safely assume that the only plausible reading is the one given in translation.

5. 君は、自分のことを反省しなさい。  
Look back on what you yourself have done.

One could potentially bring up counterexamples that defy minor details of what has been said thus far, but it is clear that context decides. Even if this context still doesn't solve everything, just like how we deal with ambiguity in English, you either make the most logical assumption of what it means or seek clarification if possible.

---

## More Examples

6. 自分でやりなさい。  
Do it yourself.

7a. 自分自身が自分であるために  
7b. 自分が自分自身であるために (もっと自然)  
In order for one to be oneself

8. 若いうちに自分のしたいことをしておくといい。  
It is good for you to do what you want to do while you're still young.

9a. 多くの人は、自分の体を大切にすべきだと主張している。(もっと自然な言い方)  
9b. 自分の体を大切にすべきだと主張する人は多い。(あまり使われていない言い方)  
A lot of people stress that everyone should take good care of themselves.

10. 彼女は鏡で長いこと自分を見つめていた。  
She was staring at herself in the mirror for a long time.

11. {各人・自分} の責任において  
At one's own risk

**Meaning Note:** It is not proper in honorifics to use 自分 to mean "I", which is extremely common in places like the 関西弁. This colloquial usage appears to have risen from the practice of soldiers having to refer to themselves as such. It can also confusingly still be used to refer to the listener.

12. 自分にやらせてください。

normal

Please let me do it.

13. この事実について君が自分達を如何ように裁いてくれても自分たちは勿論甘受する。  
To this truth, no matter how you judge us, we will of course put up with it.  
From 友情 by 武者小路実篤.

**Grammar Note:** As the sentence shows, 自分達 also exists.

## 自分自身

自分自身 is a more potent way of saying "oneself". You can see 自身 after other pronouns. So, you can get 私自身、彼自身、彼女自身, etc. Don't confuse 自身 with 自信, which means self-confidence.

14. 自分自身のことをしろ。  
Do your own thing!

15. 自分自身の言葉で言ったほうがいいんじゃない？  
Isn't it best for you to say it in your own words?

16. ぼくは自信なんかない。  
I don't have any confidence (in myself).

## 自己

自己 = Self. It is used in many phrases and is the choice for translating instances of "self-" in English.

17. 自己紹介させていただきます。  
Allow me to introduce myself.

18. その選手は、自己記録を更新しましたよ。  
That athlete beat her own record!

自己防衛	Self-defence	自己批判	Self-criticism	自己矛盾	Self-contradiction
自己紹介	Self-introduction	自己犠牲	Self-sacrifice	自己採点	Self-rating
自己評価	Self-evaluation	自己中心	Self-centered	自己主張	Self-assertion

## 自体

normal

This word refers to "itself", but it can also seldom refer to one's own body or be used as an adverb meaning on the lines of *そもそも*.

19. 考えそれ自体は、悪くありません。

The idea itself isn't bad.

20. それ自体は毒じゃない。

It itself isn't a poison.

21. 家自体が古い。

The house itself is old.

22. 口答えすること自体そもそも間違いだろう。

Talking back in of itself in the first place was a mistake, no?

## 自ら & 自ずから

As you would imagine, these are native reflexive pronouns. The first is read as *みずから*. The second is read as *おのずから*. So, be very careful about that. They're not used in any colloquial sense like *自分*. However, the overall problems of interpretation are still very relevant. In an adverbial sense they can be used like *自分で*. In this case, though, there is no particle involved. These words have the same nuance effect as *自分自身*.

23a. 天は自ら助くるものを助く。(Proverb)

23b. 天は {自ら・自分(自身)を} 助けるものを助ける。(Modern Japanese Equivalent)  
Heaven helps those who help themselves.

24. 彼自ら東京へ行った。

He went to Tokyo himself.

25. その事実は自ずから明らかだ。

The fact speak for themselves.

**Nuance Note:** *自ずから* is often seen as *自ずと* and both are used in a sense that the situation and hand is naturally so.

## 己 & 各々

*己* has always been an important reflexive pronoun in Japanese. Although now it can be used as a second person pronoun slur, you still see it in a lot of old, set phrases. The root is *おの-*, which can be seen doubled in the expression *各々* (each and every). Although there  
normal lot of possible set and at times very archaic expressions that use these words, only

truly relevant examples will be brought up.

26. 己を知れ。

Know thyself.

27. 己の説くところを励行せよ。

Practice what you preach.

28. 己が誰なのか知れ。

Know who you are.

29a. 己をもって他人を律するな。

29a. 自分の基準で他人を律するな。(もっと自然)

Don't just others by yourself.

30. 容疑者がおのおの違った説明をした。

The suspects each gave a different story.

31. どの学校でも新入生がそうであるように、私は毎日新鮮な気持ちで通いながらも、とりとめのない思いがしていた。知り人は鶴川であった。どうしても鶴川とばかり話すようになる。それでは折角新しい世界へ出て来た意味がないのを、鶴川のほうでも感じているらしく、数日たつうちに、休み時間にはわざと二人が離れて、**おのがじし**新しい友を開拓しようとした。しかし吃りの私には、そういう勇気もなかったので、鶴川の友が増えるにつれ、私はますます孤りになった。

Like a new student in any school, while I went with fresh feelings each day, there was something I couldn't bring myself to. Tsurukawa was my acquaintance. I was to no matter what only talk with Tsurukawa. With even Tsurukawa sensing that there was no meaning to coming into this long awaited new world, in a matter of days, we purposely separated during break to each find friends. But, with my stutter, as Tsurukawa's friends grew in number, I became ever more alone.

From 金閣寺 by 三島由紀夫.

**Word Note:** おのがじし is an archaism meaning それぞれに.

**Spelling Note:** In Ex. 31, there are some interesting spellings. 独り is written instead as 孤り. Also, 新しい is written as 新らしい. This is because 送り仮名 usage was not standardized at the time. Lastly, although its not exceptional, 吃り is read as どもり.

## 第184課: ～てある II: With を

In Japanese textbooks, ～を～てある is often described as being incorrect. Although it is **very** easy to misuse it, this is simply not the case. Historically speaking, it is a relatively

normal

recent speech pattern. It derived, however, from the duplicate nature of ～である itself. It can show completion of preparation and motivation. For the former, we see that を shows up a lot. Now, it is time to learn a little bit more about this mysterious grammar point.


## ～を～である？

～を～である is an odd grammar point as, overall, ～が～である is more common. Statistically speaking, が is still far more common than を, and there are very few grammatical circumstances when only the latter is correct. These situations, one would imagine, would probably be questionable phrases anyway.

～を～である stems from emphasizing the completion of preparation by an agent. In this case, the agent can clearly be oneself. This is unlike ～が～である which implies an active agent purposefully doing something, but the nuance doesn't go beyond that. The involvement of the agent with the resultant state is much higher. This makes this grammar only applicable to 他動詞. However, we'll see later on that for a few rare 自動詞, this similar nuance of ～である may be allowed.

**Particle Note:** For examples with は instead of を below, the underlining case particle is still を, but because of other factors, は is more natural.

1. 英語はもう予習してあるから、大丈夫だ。  
I've already prepared for English, so I'm OK.
2. 伊藤さんに来月の予定を話してありますか？  
Have you gotten talks done for next month's plans to Ito-san?
3. 漢字を調べてありますか？  
Have you gotten done researching the Kanji?
4. 予約をしてあります。  
I have made the reservation.
5. はい、もう飛行機のチケットを買ってあります。  
Yes, I've already bought plane tickets.
6. 子供がいたずらするといけないから、コンセントを抜いてある。  
The kids can't mess with the outlet, so I've unplugged it.
7. ご飯を作ってある。  
I've made dinner.

 地震が起こるかわからないので、災害セットを用意してある。



I don't know when an earthquake will hit, so I've prepared a disaster kit.

9. 貴重品はロッカーに預けてある。

I've stored by valuables in a locker.

10. 朝から洗濯物を外に干してあるのでそろそろ乾いただろう。

I've had the laundry drying outside since the morning, so they should be dry soon.

11. 前に水漏れが起きたので、この水道は水を止めてある。

There was a water leak earlier, so I've stopped the water supply here.

12. 外に置く予定なので、錆止めスプレーをかけてある。

I plan to place it outside, so I've sprayed with anti-rusting spray.

There are some phrases that are just incompatible with ～を～てある for various semantic conflicts.

13. 授業が始めてある → 授業を始めてある X → 授業が始まっている ○

Class has been started.

---

### 自動詞+～てある

～てある can seldom be seen after intransitive verbs. It is fair to say that these intransitive verbs take on **contextual** qualities as transitive verbs. Again, think 準備.

14. 明日の試験に備えて、たくさん寝てある。

I've slept a lot in preparation for the exam tomorrow.

**Sentence Note:** The speaker having slept is has had/needed to do so. The use of 寝てある is heavily dictated by context, and even though it is possible, it is hardly ever used and a lot of people would still think it's wrong. 寝ておく would be far much better.

But, why is 寝てある possible if ～てある should only be used with transitive verbs? It just so happens that <sup>すいみん</sup>睡眠を取る and <sup>きゅうよう</sup>休養を取る exist, which mean "to take a rest". Thus, though 寝る may be intransitive, it's not hard to think of it in transitive terms. For intransitive verbs that involve a subject doing some sort of motion/exercise, through relying on context, ～てある can be used to show the building up of such effect/prior preparation.

15. このコースは4回、5回 {泳いである ○・泳いだ ◎・泳いでおいた ◎} から、戸惑うこととはない。

I've swam the course 4, 5 times, so there is nothing to be perplexed about.

**Phrase Note:** Similar non-English like usages of ある can be seen in phrases like ことがあ  
る, which is used to show that one has done something before when used with the past  
tense of a verb. This, though, should not be confused with 自動詞+である.

---

**Grammar Note:** This grammar is very similar to ～ておく. As we've seen, it is prescriptively  
the only correct phrase for preparatory action with intransitives. ～ておく can be used with  
all verbs of volition for it shows the agent is doing something in preparation for benefit. ～て  
ある preparation is done out of necessity or command and often comes about from an  
accumulation of effect.

## Comparing ～である, ～ている, & ～ておく

Now that we have seen some particle issues with ～である and how it means a lot like ～て  
おく, we need to expand this conversation to make larger connections between not just  
these two patterns but also with ～ている. First, consider the following information in the  
chart below.

～ておく	Action in advance or current state maintenance in thinking of a later benefit.
～ている	In the continuation of an action/the continuation of a state after a change/custom and or experience/unchanging.
～である	Self-confidence or condition in which handling has finished by a certain necessity/obligation/command.

In the case of ～ている・いた and ～である・あった, the base time simply goes from  
present to past, but the time that Verb A expresses respectively doesn't change. But, ～てお  
く・おいた shows a strange behavior. Without sliding the base time, it has the time frame of  
Verb A to go from "unrealized" to "already realized". This is because of the original nature of  
the verb 置く.

Consider this. 行きます and 食べます express an action that is unrealized at the present  
base time. On the other hand, 行きました and 食べました show that the action has formerly  
realized at the present base time. This is just like ～ておく and ～ておいた.

Again, consider 呼んでおく and 呼んでおいた. The Verb A 呼ぶ is unrealized in the former  
and realized beforehand in the latter. However, in the both cases, the base time is the  
present. In the first, you are going to do something in preparation for a certain circumstance.  
In the latter, you have made those preparations, but the circumstance has not occurred.  
Thus, the base time is the same.

セフ  
normal and いる take such strong grammatical burdens that they lose much of their

independent properties; however, as the previous section concerning the verb 置く, おく's original properties play a direct role in the usage of ～ておく.

---

### ～ておく, ～てある, & ～ている Interchangeability

There is interchangeability among these items when Verb A is already realized in the present base time. Of course, the nuances are not the same. However, this doesn't negate the interchangeability.

1. XがYをAて {ある・おいた・いる} : Handling finished by X
16. 教科書は借りて {あった・おいた・いた} が、結局、読まなかった。  
I had borrowed the textbook, but in the end, I didn't read it.
17. 夕食は用意して {ある・おいた・いる} から、食べていってね。  
Dinner has been prepared, so go eat.
18. 明日、日本語の試験でしょう？ちゃんと勉強して {ある・おいた・いる} のか。  
Tomorrow's the Japanese exam, right? Have you gotten your studying done?
19. 今日という日のために買い込んで {あった・おいた・いた} んだよ。  
I have had it bought up for a day such as today.
2. XがYをAて {ある・いる・おく} : A result of an action done by X continues
20. 思い出のある貴重品を、捨てずに残して {ある・いる・おく} 。  
Keeping one's valuables with memories instead of throwing them away.

Of course, even in this situation, if there is a meaning of handling being finished, ～ておく becomes ～ておいた. Also, again, though one translation may be given for each example, remember that the translations are only taking advantage of English ambiguity and that you should still keep in mind the meaning differences discussed earlier.

---

### Further Differentiating ～ておく, ～ている, & ～てある

Consider the following sentence where the three patterns could be used and think how the meaning of the sentence changes.

21. あのカップルは、よく喧嘩<sup>けんか</sup>するから、席を離して {ある・おいた・いる} 。  
Because that couple fights a lot, their sets [have been kept/were/were made]separate.

normal 離してある: Shows the result of inevitably dealing with the problem by separating their

seats apart from each other. The visual effect isn't to the point of 「席が離してある」, but since the two end up going up to each other when they take their eyes off each other, a sense of effort in keeping their seats apart is felt, and a dynamic image is presented.

**席を離しておいた**: Rather than inevitability but by necessity, you are informing someone after dealing with it with benefit as being the goal.

**席を離している**: Shows that one is maintaining the situation after initially dealing with it.

It's fair to say that both ～てある and ～ておく have not a particular meaning of showing preparation, but rather, their interpretation is based on context. This is because the strongest feeling of "preparation" is when something **has** been done beforehand.

パターン	場面	視覚効果	処理の意志	持続の意図	原因・目的
～ている	静的	X	X	X	X
～てある	動的	△	処理済	○	必要性など
～ておく	動的	X	○	○	都合のよさ
～ておいた	静的	X	処理済	?	都合のよさ

**Terminology Notes:** しかくこうか 視覚効果 = Visual Effect; 処理の意志 = Volition of Handling; 持続の意図 = Intentions of Continuation; 静的 = Static; 動的 = Dynamic; 済す(み) = Resolved; Completed

### With Transitivity Verb Pairs

With all of these patterns and then adding transitivity into the problem, there can be at times six possible options. Of course, options in Japanese are never 100% synonymous, but in such instances where things happen to be very similar, you definitely need to understand the differences.

- 22a. そのテレビがついているのは、お昼のニュースを見るためですよ。
- 22b. そのテレビをつけているのは、お昼のニュースを見るためですよ。
- 22c. そのテレビがつけてあるのは、お昼のニュースを見るためですよ。
- 22d. そのテレビをつけてあるのは、お昼のニュースを見るためですよ。
- 22e. そのテレビをつけておくのは、お昼のニュースを見るためですよ。
- 22f. そのテレビをつけておいたのは、お昼のニュースを見るためですよ。

All of these sentence show the condition after the TV is turned on. However, #2 also has the possible reading of currently turning on the TV.

normal

Imagine the situation is someone asking why the TV is on. In such a situation, the speaker could use the aforementioned sentences to respond in the following ways.

**テレビがついている**: The TV is just on. There is no image of who may have turned it on. Even if the speaker were the one that turned it on, from this statement, you wouldn't know.

**テレビをつけている**: A nonspecific someone has put the TV on. Even if the speaker turned it on, the speaker asks as if he/she doesn't know, and the phrase simply infers that someone willfully turned the TV on.

**テレビがつけてある**: Someone not the speaker has gone through the trouble of turning the TV on. The person that turned it on felt a necessity or duty to turn it on for the purpose of news watching. Even if the speaker were the one to turn on the TV, the speaker is not telling that to the listener.

**テレビをつけてある**: The speaker has gone through the trouble of turning on the TV. Even if it is not the speaker, someone managing the TV with a responsibility to deal with it did.

**テレビをつけておく**: The speaker or a particular person maintain the state of the TV being turned on. The one who turned on the TV saw benefit in watching the news and is the one trying to maintain the state of the TV turned on for that purpose.

**テレビをつけておいた**: The speaker or a particular person went through the trouble of turning on the TV, but it is uncertain where from that point that individual is trying to maintain the state of the TV being on for the purpose of watching the news. In other words, it doesn't even show whether the TV is still on or not.

---

### Summarization of the Usages of ～ておく, ～ている, & ～てある

Pattern	Time Relation	Usage(s)
が + 自動詞 + ている	Realized beforehand	Condition after a natural change
を + 他動詞 + ている	Realized beforehand Same time frame	Condition/effect after you make a change In the act of doing something
が + 他動詞 + てある	Realized beforehand	Condition after a change is made purposely by someone
を + 他動詞 + てある	Realized beforehand	Condition after a change is made by the speaker/agent.

normal

を + 他動詞 + ておく	Unrealized	Will in favorably changing a circumstance. Will in maintaining a favorable position
を + 他動詞 + ておいた	Realized beforehand	Effect/condition one changes into a favorable outcome. The condition caused may or may not end up favorable.

The chart above details the differences that have been discussed up to this point between these three expressions. Now, the next chart shows when they **mustn't** ever be interchanged with each other. These are listed in the chart above as well.

Pattern	Time Relation	Usage(s)
を + 他動詞 + ている	Same time frame	Progressive action
を + 他動詞 + ておく	Unrealized	Preparing in advance
を + 他動詞 + ておいた	Already realized	When the outcome isn't beneficial When preparations for the future have been completed

### Grammar Notes:

- As we've seen before, when ～ておく is used in showing custom or repeated action, interchangeability is made as it then shows what has previously happened before.
  - When ～ている is used to show a natural change, then interchangeability is impossible. Remember the TV example? TVs are turned on by people most of the time. So, テレビがついている can be rephrased and still make valid yet different sentences. A sentence like the following can't be rephrased.
23. お酒、すっかり冷めてるんじゃない？温めましょう。○  
The sake's completely chilled down? Let's heat it up.
- However, if the speaker wants to emphasize that something is not just a natural change, given that this is logical to assume, 自動詞＋ている → 他動詞＋ている is allowed.
24. 肩もだいぶ {凝ってる ◎・凝らしてる} ね。  
My shoulder's also quite stiff.

## 第185課: 語尾 III: かな, かしら, じゃん, い, け, が, こと, たら, & や

Yes, there are more 語尾. There are even more out there in dialects and Classical Japanese that you will one day encounter.

## The Final Particles かな & かしら

かな = "I wonder" and is a colloquial variant of 〜でしょう. 〜ないかな shows wishful thinking by stressing desire for something to happen already. かしら is a feminine version.

1. 終わるかな。

I wonder if it's going to end.

2. 悲しいかな。

How sad!

3. 窓を開けてくれないかな。  
まど

Could you open up the window?

**Nuance Note:** As demonstrated, かな may also elicit a request to people familiar/close to you.

4. 喋りすぎたのじゃないかしら。  
しゃべ

I'm afraid I did chatter too much.

5. どのくらい雪が積もったかしらね。  
つ

I wonder how much snow accumulated.

6. どうかしら？

How does it look?

7. これをいただけるかしら？

May I take this?

9. 大丈夫かしら。  
だいじょうぶ

I wonder if he's OK.

10. あの男、誰かしら。  
だれ

I wonder who that man is.

11a. 売らんかなの宣伝 (慣用句)  
せんでん

normal

11b. 売ってなんぼの姿勢が見え隠れする宣伝 (普通の言い方)  
Exploitation/sales talk

**Phrase Note:** 売らんかな is a set phrase made up of the verb 売る (to sell), the auxiliary verb 〜ん, which is a contraction of 〜む (a Classical ending that shows guess here), and かな.

13. 「トルコで <sup>もっと</sup>最も危険な道路」と言われるのもむべなるかなである。

It's also plausible that it's called "the most dangerous road in Turkey".  
From 雨天炎天 by 村上春樹.

**Phrase Note:** むべなるかな is a set phrase made up an old 形容動詞 in its 連体形, むべなる, which is equivalent to もっともな (plausible; quite right), followed by かな.

<sup>は</sup>果 たせるかな means "just as expected". It is interchangeable with 果たして, but it may be confusing to some simply because it has かな in it.

14. {果たせるかな・案の <sup>じょう</sup>定・思っ <sup>こころ</sup>た通り} 試 <sup>しつぱい</sup>みはことごとく失敗したんだ。  
As expected, the experiment failed altogether.

## The Final Particle じゃん

じゃん started out as a contraction of じゃないか. Once it reached Tokyo, it reached national stardom. Unlike what it came from, it is quite casual and is by no means blunt.

15. 足元が危 <sup>あしもと</sup>なっかしいじゃん?  
Isn't your footing unsteady?

**Word Note:** 危なっかしい is not a typo of 危ない (dangerous). The word is very similar and refers to a situation that is either unsteady or dangerous. It is very similar to the word "precarious".

16. いいじゃん。  
Isn't that good?

## The Final Particle い

い is quite explosive and normally rude. It is almost always used by guys but is most normalrtantly used by people of high temperament. It is often seen after だ, や, or じゃ and is



also seen often after the 命令形.

17. 当たり前だぜい。

That is obvious!

18. おい、こりゃ何だい？

Hey, what is this!?

19. 何か飲むかい？

Will you drink anything?

20. こりゃ何じゃい？

What's that?

**Etymology Note:** This particle comes from the particle よ. よ → え → い.

## The Final Particle け

(っ) け is casually used in attempt to recall something by jogging one's memory and perhaps also the listener(s). つけ can only follow either the plain non-past or the plain or polite past forms. So, ですつけ isn't used. It is most often used with the plain forms, probably due to the fact that it is a contraction. However, with adjectives and verbs in the non-past, んだ is almost always inserted. So, you will see 新しいんだっけ but not 新しいっけ. This, though, may be acceptable in certain dialects.

This restriction stems from the fact that its usage with the past tense has a much longer history. -た can show confirmation in sentences like "what was his name?". Obviously the person's name hasn't changed, but we still use the past tense form of the verb.

Similarly, with interrogatives it solicits a response from the listener, whether it's something that the listener(s) have actually said before or not. Some situations, then, require the past tense. For instance, if you're recalling an event that's already happened, だっけ is wrong.

---

### Examples

21. よく喧嘩<sup>けんか</sup>したっけねえ。

We often bickered, didn't we?

22. このパンはもう賞味期限<sup>しょうみきげん</sup>が切れてるんだっけ？

Isn't this bread already passed the expiration date?

normal

23. いつ象を捕まえたっけ？  
When did you catch the elephant?

24. アメリカでは、税金が去年ぐーんと引き上げられたっけ。  
Weren't taxes raised straight up in America last year?

25. いつだ（った）っけ。  
When is it?

**Historical Note:** ～たっけ comes from ～たりけり. It does not come from ～たかえ. ～かえ is now old-fashioned, but it is a feature of Eastern Japanese dialects similar to かい without the vulgarity.

26. 出来たかえ。  
Could you do it?

From 我輩は猫である by 漱石.

**Dialect Note:** In some dialects け can be a ruder or typical version of か.

27. これ要るけ。(京都弁)  
Do you need this?

Also, in some dialects け → かいな. In Standard Japanese, though, this is an old ending that stresses a thought with a sense of doubt or is a contraction of そうかな.

28. やったかいな (京都弁) = やったっけ

## The Final Particle が

1. The final particle が shows malice by speaking ill of someone. This usage is very rude and may cause sharp backlashes.

29. ガキめが！  
You brat!

---

2. The final particle が may hint at one's own thoughts rather than what's at hand.

30. 今日はもう閉店なんですが。  
But we're already closed for today. (Polite)

normal | こ っ越せばよかったんだが。

It would be good if we had moved, but...

32. 僕も注意したんだが。

I also warned them, but...

33. もしもし、鈴木ですが。

Hello, this is Suzuki. (Polite)

34. 社長が呼びですが。(Respectful)

The company president has called for you.

## The Final Particle こと

The final particle こと is not the nominal noun 事. It has quite a few usages.

- Shows a practical yet somewhat harsh command most often used by superiors.
- Shows slightly deep emotion in feminine speech.
- Shows a slight feeling of questioning in feminine speech.
- ことよ softens an affirmative statement in feminine speech.

Use the definitions above to figure out which usage is being used in the following examples.

35. 珍しい動物だこと。

It's a rare animal!

36. もういいこと！

Isn't it already OK?

37. 金を返すこと！

Pay back the money!

38. とにかく謝ること！

Anyhow, apologize!

## The Final Particle たら

This たら brings up something to someone's attention with a sense of surprise, criticism, or impatience. This has nothing to do with the conditionals, but don't be surprised when you hear it. It's not a good thing if such a statement is directed to you.

normal やめてったら！

Stop that!

40. だまってたら！  
Shut it!

## The Final Particle や

The final particle や has 4 usages.

- Expresses urgency to people at or below one's status. In masculine speech this can be used to coax action similarly to "shall we".
- Lightly declares. This could be out of an array of emotions.
- Expresses exclamation.
- Used to call a person/thing one has a close relationship or an underling. By elderly people, this can be used to soften the tone.

---

### Examples

41. お祖父<sup>じい</sup>さんや、今日はあなたの<sup>たんじょうび</sup>誕生日ですよ。  
Today's your birthday, my dear old man.

42. まあ、座れや。(Old person; dialectical)  
Well, sit down.

43. そんなこと、知らなかったや。  
I had no idea about that.

44. こりゃええや。(Dialectical)  
This is good.

45. まあいいや。  
Ahh, forget it.

46. 恐ろ<sup>おそ</sup>しいや。  
That's scary!

## Multiple 語尾

You will often see more than one 語尾 at once. There are several important combinations that you should be aware that you can make. Exact combinations may not be common in some parts of Japan. Plus, there are plenty of interjectory particles that are very regional.

## かね

かな is the combination of か and な. かね is also possible. It works the same way as かな, but it is definitely more common in certain age groups and or dialects in Japanese. It can also be used to soften a criticism like in "どうしてそんなことをしているのかね?". It is softer than かな.

---

## がな

This comes from the archaic particle もがな, which shows wishful thinking. This is equivalent to といいなあ. がな is still occasionally used. It may also be dialectal to emphasize (a reminder).

47. もう済んだがな！  
It should already be done!
- 

## かい

かい is a more harsh version of か. Its use is declining and can be associated with foreigner speech as learners tend to overuse it.

48. もういいのかい。  
Isn't it already OK?
- 

## やい

やい is used to harshly call out for someone. It may also make a curt statement.

49. 意気地なしやい！  
You coward!
50. 俺じゃねーやい！  
It's not me!
51. 高田君やい！  
Takada!
- 

## わい

わい is typical of (older) male speech, and it is more common in dialectical speech, especially in West Japanese Dialects. This ending shows exclamation.

52. こんな老人を目の前にして「お墓」の一語をさらりと口に出すというのはなかなか良い根性をしておるわいと平岡は思い一転して愉快的気分になってきた。

Having such an old man in front of his eyes without hesitation express the word "grave" shows good tenacity, Hiraoka thought, and in turn, he came to feel delightful.

From 不可能 by 松浦寿輝.

53. 困ったことだわい。

I'm troubled.

54. そんなことないわい。

That's not it at all.

---

### Other Important Combinations

There are still more combinations. よ is often followed by ね and な. わ is often followed by よ and ね. い is seen all the time after ぜ and ぞ. If 語尾 have opposing usages, they aren't going to be used together. You may hear のね but not のな. Many combinations are often limited to certain regions of Japan.

## 第186課: The Particle て III

The conjunctive particle て is by far the most important conjunctive particle in Japanese. By the end of this lesson, you should feel more comfortable in your ability to use and understand this fascinating particle.

### The Particle て

て **connects two or more phrases**, sometimes implicitly indicating reason. However, the action in the latter clause(s) can't contain volition. It may also **list actions or qualities or even indicate a method for action**.

Though some call the て形 the Japanese "gerund", it can't be used as a nominal phrase, though ～ての might make one rethink this. Even so, ～ての is either a case of ellipsis (の is in place of something) or an alternative 連体形 (Ex. 事実に基づいての論文 VS 事実に基づいた論文). As other names cause problems, we'll continue to call it a conjunctive particle.

Similar to ～た, the same sound changes mentioned above apply to ～て. It's important to normal that て is generally thought to have come from the 連用形 of the perfective auxiliary つ,

which is now obsolete. Some dispute this, however, and claim it has always existed. This will become important to keep in mind when tense in relation to て is addressed.

At times, て creates adverbial-like expressions that don't have subjects or objects. Since the meanings of these expressions can't simply be understood from the verbs they come from, you have to treat them as separate words. Examples include 改める (to revise) VS 改めて (anew), 強いる (to coerce) VS 強いて (boldly). These phrases, though, will also not be the focus of this lesson.

---

### Examples

1. 従って、出航は中止となりました。  
Therefore, leaving port is suspended.
2. 生まれて初めてアメリカを離れた。  
I left America for the first time in my life.
3. 改めてやりなおす。  
To start afresh.
4. 強いて {いうなら・いえば}  
If I must say so...

**Word Note:** 強いる = To compel.

There are other times when an auxiliary/supplementary verb of some kind comes after て to create a complex predicate phrase (Ex. ～ている and ～てある). Transitivity is a huge issue with these two endings. The first could result in a transitive or intransitive expression whereas the latter only results in an intransitive expression despite the verbs that it attaches to are all transitive. Essentially, the semantic issues are in large part determined by the latter element.

5. そのままにしてある。  
It was left as is (by someone).  
State: Something has been left as is until someone else changes the fact.
6. 彼は悲しげな顔をしている。  
He's having a sad face.

The next usage is when it connects two or more phrases. There are numerous purposes for this. You already know some usages. It can implicitly show reason, show sequence of events, indicate action or means, concession, etc. It can also be contrastive at times.

7. 花子さんは合格して、弘さんは不合格でした。  
Hanako passed, and Hiroshi failed.
8. 友達を苛めて、先生に叱られました。  
I was scolded by teacher for scolding my friend.
9. 酔って道に迷う。  
To get drunk and lost.
10. 彼は知っていて実行しない。  
Although he knows, he won't perform/realize it.
11. コーヒーに砂糖とミルクを入れてかき混ぜて飲んだ。  
I drank my coffee by mixing in sugar and milk.
12. 一斑いっばんを見て全豹ぜんびょうをトす。  
Seeing one spot, you can predict the whole leopard.

**Proverb Note:** This proverb shows how one can predict the whole thing of something by merely seeing one part.

As there are so many possible semantic relations that て can have, it is often thought to have no actual meaning itself, As far as this third broad usage goes, it does help to think of it as "and", but not in the sense of coordination.

13. 久実は明日名古屋へ行って、光平は明後日土佐から帰ってきます。  
Kumi will go to Nagoya tomorrow, and Kohei will return from Tosa the day after tomorrow.

In this sentence the first part is not complementing or modifying the second part in any way. There are several other similar expressions in Japan with this same apparent discrepancy with the grammar and the meaning of the actual phrases.

At times it appears that て is holding down the fort in a long continuous phrase where then the tense is decided at the end. However, depending on the speech modal, the tense of a て clause and the final clause don't have to match. Consider the following.

14. 鈴木さんは地元の木を使って家を建てるそうです。(Only one interpretation)  
I hear that Mr. Suzuki will build a house using local lumber.
15. 円子は昨日出国して、 誉は明日帰国してくるそうです。  
I heard that Maruko left the country yesterday and that Homare will return tomorrow.  
Maruko left the country yesterday, and I hear that Homare will return tomorrow. ??

normal 主人が亡くなって奥様は保険金を請求するそうです。



I heard that the husband died and the wife will claim the insurance money.  
The husband died, and I heard that the wife will claim the insurance money.

Consider the following sentence where tense is all over the place, but due to the context, the sentence is completely fine. However, just as in English, it makes the sentence potentially unnatural. With verb deletion, however, the unnaturalness that would be expected in the sentence below doesn't exist.

17. 伸三は明後日（払って）、美登里は先日（払って）、セスは昨日払った。  
Shinzo will pay the day after tomorrow, Midori paid the other day, and Seth paid yesterday.

Intonation can also change things up substantially. Just as in English, a misplaced comma and cause huge changes in meaning. This is especially so when the complex predicate phrases mentioned above get split up, and it sounds as if the final verb is part of an independent clause away from て.

18. 彼氏の日記を読んで、仕舞った。  
I read my boyfriend's diary and put it away.

19. 彼氏の日記を読んでしまった。  
I accidentally read my boyfriend's diary.

What you can't do is conjoin things into one question that are not of a cause relationship. Otherwise, you would have to split up the questions.

20. 誰が京都へ行って畑中さんが奈良へ行ったんですか。X  
Who went to Kyoto, and Hatanaka went to Nara? (Intended)

21. 誰が来てパーティーが台無しになったのか。○  
Who came and the party was ruined (as an effect)?

22. ランスが来て、何が台無しになったの？○  
Lance came, and what got ruined?

There has to be a cause relation involved. If it is just additive, then て is not applicable. This misunderstanding is the cause a lot of mistakes.

In some ways, it might actually be smart to view て as syntactically just an "and", and other implications are added through context. One way to find out whether these added features are from context or a part of it is to see if you can have one of these so-called features cancelled out in discourse.

23. 風邪を引いて頭が痛いです。頭が痛いのはいつものことですけど。  
I got a cold and my head hurts, but my head always hurts.

normal

It appears that the speaker is trying to negate the cold as being the reason for his headache because it's an everyday thing for the poor person.

24. 久実は名古屋へ行って、光平は土佐から帰ってくる。光平が帰ってくるのが先だけど。  
Kumi will go to Nagoya, and Kohei will return to from Tosa. Kohei's return will come first, though.

This sentence shows that even a temporal sequence of actions can also be negated in context. It's starting to appear that these added situations are applied to て in context. But, does this mean that it's truly meaningless itself? This is challenged by the fact that there are restrictions to using て. After all, if it were truly meaningless, it wouldn't have them.

One interesting restriction is that it cannot make a mere incidental temporal action.

25. 僕はアパートを出て、雨が降ってきた。X → 僕はアパートを出 {ると・たら} 、雨が降ってきた。○  
When I left my apartment, it began raining.

Consider the following bad sentences and what they would have to be to work with the given meaning or changed to keep the same structure but give a different sentence.

26a. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人は狩人であって、漁夫だった。X  
26b. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人は狩人であり、漁夫だった。○  
The Jomon people who were the first in the Japanese islands to first form their own culture were farmers and fishermen.

To preserve であって, the latter part should be negative because the sentence sounds contrastive.

27a. 息子がもうすぐ学校に入ってジムをやめなければならなかった。X  
27b. 息子がもうすぐ学校に入るので、ジムをやめなければならなかった。○  
My son will start school soon, so I had to quit the gym.

There are a few problems with using て. One, although tense was shown above to not necessarily be temporally sequential with て, in this case it sounds as if the "starting school" is already a past event, which is not true. Other cause relations are also out of the question for similar tense reasons.

28. パソコンを買った。嬉しい。 ○  
I bought a PC. I'm happy.

29a. パソコンを買って嬉しい。X  
29b. パソコンを買って嬉しかった。○

normal I bought a PC and was happy.

Perhaps a more natural way to say this in English would be "I was happy that I bought a PC". From this data, one can surmise that in order for て to show cause, the past tense must be used. However, with that being said, it causes a problem that the following are OK.

30. 試験に受かって嬉しい。○

I am glad that I passed the exam.

31. 弟が来て嬉しい。○

I am glad that my younger brother came.

If the speaker is not the primary causer of the action, this cause relation is fine. This just goes to show that although one constraint may be important, other factors are important too.

---

### ～ないで VS ～なくて

Although etymologically the same, these two variations of the negative て form have developed in quite different ways in usage.

32a. 仕事をしないでいる。○

32b. 仕事をしなくている。×

I'm not working.

The latter cannot be used because it does not subordinate the nucleus of the phrase. You are in state of being of not working. This sense of without is carried out by ～ないで.

33. 山下さんはお金を貯めなくて車を買った。 (変な日本語)

Mr. Yamashita bought a car, having not saved up money.

34. 山田さんはお金を貯めないで車を買った。

Mr. Yamada bought a car without saving money.

Notice the difference in translation. The first sounds like a sequential ordering of events while the latter is ambiguous. It doesn't have a sense of time as to whether this is a given point of time then or a sequence of events of having not saved up money and then buying a car.

～ないで can also be used to show by means of not doing something.

35. ご飯を食べないで、学校に行った。

(He) went to school without eating.

## 第186課: The Particle て III

The conjunctive particle て is by far the most important conjunctive particle in Japanese. By the end of this lesson, you should feel more comfortable in your ability to use and understand this fascinating particle.

## The Particle て

て **connects two or more phrases**, sometimes implicitly indicating reason. However, the action in the latter clause(s) can't contain volition. It may also **list actions or qualities or even indicate a method for action**.

Though some call the て形 the Japanese "gerund", it can't be used as a nominal phrase, though ～ての might make one rethink this. Even so, ～ての is either a case of ellipsis (の is in place of something) or an alternative 連体形 (Ex. 事実に基づいての論文 VS 事実に基づいた論文). As other names cause problems, we'll continue to call it a conjunctive particle.

Similar to ～た, the same sound changes mentioned above apply to ～て. It's important to note that て is generally thought to have come from the 連用形 of the perfective auxiliary つ, which is now obsolete. Some dispute this, however, and claim it has always existed. This will become important to keep in mind when tense in relation to て is addressed.

At times, て creates adverbial-like expressions that don't have subjects or objects. Since the meanings of these expressions can't simply be understood from the verbs they come from, you have to treat them as separate words. Examples include 改める (to revise) VS 改めて (anew), 強いる (to coerce) VS 強いて (boldly). These phrases, though, will also not be the focus of this lesson.

---

### Examples

1. 従って、出航は中止となりました。  
Therefore, leaving port is suspended.
2. 生まれて初めてアメリカを離れた。  
I left America for the first time in my life.
3. 改めてやりなおす。  
To start afresh.
4. 強いて {いうなら・いえば}  
If I must say so...

**Word Note:** 強いる = To compel.

normal

There are other times when an auxiliary/supplementary verb of some kind comes after て to create a complex predicate phrase (Ex. ～ている and ～てある). Transitivity is a huge issue with these two endings. The first could result in a transitive or intransitive expression whereas the latter only results in an intransitive expression despite the verbs that it attaches to are all transitive. Essentially, the semantic issues are in large part determined by the latter element.

5. そのままにしてある。

It was left as is (by someone).

State: Something has been left as is until someone else changes the fact.

6. 彼は悲しげな顔をしている。

He's having a sad face.

The next usage is when it connects two or more phrases. There are numerous purposes for this. You already know some usages. It can implicitly show reason, show sequence of events, indicate action or means, concession, etc. It can also be contrastive at times.

7. 花子さんは合格して、弘さんは不合格でした。

Hanako passed, and Hiroshi failed.

8. 友達を苛めて、先生に叱られました。

I was scolded by teacher for scolding my friend.

9. 酔って道に迷う。

To get drunk and lost.

10. 彼は知っていて実行しない。

Although he knows, he won't perform/realize it.

11. コーヒーに砂糖とミルクを入れてかき混ぜて飲んだ。

I drank my coffee by mixing in sugar and milk.

12. 一斑いっばんを見て全豹ぜんびょうをトす。ぼく

Seeing one spot, you can predict the whole leopard.

**Proverb Note:** This proverb shows how one can predict the whole thing of something by merely seeing one part.

As there are so many possible semantic relations that て can have, it is often thought to have no actual meaning itself. As far as this third broad usage goes, it does help to think of it as "and", but not in the sense of coordination.

13. 久実くみは明日名古屋へ行って、光平こうへいは明後日土佐から帰ってきます。

normalumi will go to Nagoya tomorrow, and Kohei will return from Tosa the day after

tomorrow.

In this sentence the first part is not complementing or modifying the second part in any way. There are several other similar expressions in Japan with this same apparent discrepancy with the grammar and the meaning of the actual phrases.

At times it appears that て is holding down the fort in a long continuous phrase where then the tense is decided at the end. However, depending on the speech modal, the tense of a て clause and the final clause don't have to match. Consider the following.

14. 鈴木さんは地元の木を使って家を建てるそうです。(Only one interpretation)

I hear that Mr. Suzuki will build a house using local lumber.

15. 円子は昨日出国して、 誉は明日帰国してくるそうです。

I heard that Maruko left the country yesterday and that Homare will return tomorrow.

Maruko left the country yesterday, and I hear that Homare will return tomorrow. ??

16. ご主人が亡くなって奥様は保険金を請求するそうです。

I heard that the husband died and the wife will claim the insurance money.

The husband died, and I heard that the wife will claim the insurance money.

Consider the following sentence where tense is all over the place, but due to the context, the sentence is completely fine. However, just as in English, it makes the sentence potentially unnatural. With verb deletion, however, the unnaturalness that would be expected in the sentence below doesn't exist.

17. 伸三は明後日（払って）、美登里は先日（払って）、セスは昨日払った。

Shinzo will pay the day after tomorrow, Midori paid the other day, and Seth paid yesterday.

Intonation can also change things up substantially. Just as in English, a misplaced comma and cause huge changes in meaning. This is especially so when the complex predicate phrases mentioned above get split up, and it sounds as if the final verb is part of an independent clause away from て.

18. 彼氏の日記を読んで、仕舞った。

I read my boyfriend's diary and put it away.

19. 彼氏の日記を読んでしまった。

I accidentally read my boyfriend's diary.

What you can't do is conjoin things into one question that are not of a cause relationship. Otherwise, you would have to split up the questions.

20. 誰が京都へ行って畑中さんが奈良へ行ったんですか。X

normal Who went to Kyoto, and Hatanaka went to Nara? (Intended)

21. 誰が来てパーティーが台無しになったのか。○  
Who came and the party was ruined (as an effect)?

22. ランスが来て、何が台無しになったの？○  
Lance came, and what got ruined?

There has to be a cause relation involved. If it is just additive, then て is not applicable. This misunderstanding is the cause a lot of mistakes.

In some ways, it might actually be smart to view て as syntactically just an "and", and other implications are added through context. One way to find out whether these added features are from context or a part of it is to see if you can have one of these so-called features cancelled out in discourse.

23. 風邪を引いて頭が痛いです。頭が痛いのはいつものことですけど。  
I got a cold and my head hurts, but my head always hurts.

It appears that the speaker is trying to negate the cold as being the reason for his headache because it's an everyday thing for the poor person.

24. 久実は名古屋へ行って、光平は土佐から帰ってくる。光平が帰ってくるのが先だけど。  
Kumi will go to Nagoya, and Kohei will return to from Tosa. Kohei's return will come first, though.

This sentence shows that even a temporal sequence of actions can also be negated in context. It's starting to appear that these added situations are applied to て in context. But, does this mean that it's truly meaningless itself? This is challenged by the fact that there are restrictions to using て. After all, if it were truly meaningless, it wouldn't have them.

One interesting restriction is that it cannot make a mere incidental temporal action.

25. 僕はアパートを出て、雨が降ってきた。X → 僕はアパートを出 {ると・たら} 、雨が降ってきた。○  
When I left my apartment, it began raining.

Consider the following bad sentences and what they would have to be to work with the given meaning or changed to keep the same structure but give a different sentence.

26a. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人は狩人であって、漁夫だった。X

26b. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人は狩人であり、漁夫だった。○

The Jomon people who were the first in the Japanese islands to first form their own culture were farmers and fishermen.

To preserve であって, the latter part should be negative because the sentence sounds normal active.

- 27a. 息子がもうすぐ学校に入ってジムをやめなければならなかった。X  
27b. 息子がもうすぐ学校に入るので、ジムをやめなければならなかった。○  
My son will start school soon, so I had to quit the gym.

There are a few problems with using て. One, although tense was shown above to not necessarily be temporally sequential with て, in this case it sounds as if the "starting school" is already a past event, which is not true. Other cause relations are also out of the question for similar tense reasons.

28. パソコンを買った。嬉しい。○  
I bought a PC. I'm happy.

- 29a. パソコンを買って嬉しい。X  
29b. パソコンを買って嬉しかった。○  
I bought a PC and was happy.

Perhaps a more natural way to say this in English would be "I was happy that I bought a PC". From this data, one can surmise that in order for て to show cause, the past tense must be used. However, with that being said, it causes a problem that the following are OK.

30. 試験に受かって嬉しい。○  
I am glad that I passed the exam.

31. 弟が来て嬉しい。○  
I am glad that my younger brother came.

If the speaker is not the primary causer of the action, this cause relation is fine. This just goes to show that although one constraint may be important, other factors are important too.

---

### ～ないで VS ～なくて

Although etymologically the same, these two variations of the negative て form have developed in quite different ways in usage.

- 32a. 仕事をしないでいる。○  
32b. 仕事をしなくている。X  
I'm not working.

The latter cannot be used because it does not subordinate the nucleus of the phrase. You are in state of being of not working. This sense of without is carried out by ～ないで.

33. 山下さんはお金を貯めなくて車を買った。(変な日本語)

normal Mr. Yamashita bought a car, having not saved up money.



34. 山田さんはお金を貯めないで車を買った。  
Mr. Yamada bought a car without saving money.

Notice the difference in translation. The first sounds like a sequential ordering of events while the latter is ambiguous. It doesn't have a sense of time as to whether this is a given point of time then or a sequence of events of having not saved up money and then buying a car.

～ないで can also be used to show by means of not doing something.

35. ご飯を食べないで、学校に行った。  
(He) went to school without eating.

## 第188課: Planning & Obligation: つもり, はず, & ~べきだ

In this lesson we will learn about speech modals of planning and obligation. The speech modals that we are going to cover are the following.

### つもり

The noun 積もり may show one's intent or expectation to do something. In speech modals, it is normally left in かな.

- 1a. 今日何をするつもり（か）？  
1b. 今日は何をするの？  
What do you plan to do today?
2. 車を買うつもりだ。  
I plan to buy a car.
3. 彼女に従うつもりはない。  
I have no intention of obeying her.
4. タバコをやめるつもりはない。  
I am not planning on quitting smoking.
5. もっと早く帰るつもりでした。  
I planned on coming home earlier.
6. 留学するつもりはありますか。  
Do you have intentions of studying abroad?

7. 女優のつもりでいる。

She is by way of being an actress.

8. 冗談のつもりで言ったのに、彼を怒らせてしまいました。

I meant it as a joke, but I accidentally made him angry.

9. 日本へ着いたら、日本語の辞典<sup>じてん</sup>を買うつもりだ。

(When/right after) I arrive in Japan, I plan to buy a Japanese dictionary.

10a. 今日、田中さんに会う予定はない。

10b. 今日、田中さんに会わない。

I have no intention of meeting today.

**Word Note:** As the two variants above show, sometimes ～つもりだ is a little unnatural. 予定だ shows an intended schedule to inform people.

11. 明日の朝は早く起きるつもりです。

I plan to wake up early tomorrow morning.

12. 旅行は、三日間ぐらいの予定です。

The trip is scheduled to last three days.

13. 明日は授業に行かないつもりです。

I plan to not go to class tomorrow.

14. 友だちのつもりだが何だか 妙<sup>なん みょう な</sup>に馴れ馴れしい。

We intended to be friends, but for some reason we got strangely over-familiar.

**Word Note:** The verb 目論<sup>もくろ</sup>む may also be used to show planning.

15. あいつが何を目論<sup>もくろ</sup>んでるのか分からねー。(Slang; Vulgar)

I don't know what he's scheming to do.

16. 私は医者になるつもりでしたが。

I planned to become a doctor, but...

17. どこへ行くつもりだい？ (Masculine; old-fashioned)

Where do you think you're going?

**Phrase Note:** The use of ～だい in this sentence makes it a little old-fashioned. Also, it would only be used by men.

18. 来週までに4章読むつもりです。  
I plan to read 4 chapters by next week

19. そんなつもりじゃなかったよ。  
I didn't mean that.

20. 全力で支援<sup>しえん</sup>するつもりだよ。  
I plan to support you with all my support.

21. 是<sup>ぜ</sup>が非<sup>ひ</sup>でも留学するつもりらしいです。  
He seems to plan to study abroad by all means.

**Usage Note:** Remember that your plans should be treated differently from another person's.

**Grammar Note:** 「～たつもりだ、～のつもりだ、～ているつもりだ」等 show suppositions that contrast reality. They may also show self-centered decisions, subjective impressions, etc.

22. 抜<sup>ぬ</sup>かりなくやったつもりだったが失敗した。  
I intended to have made it without blunder, but I failed.

23. 帰るつもりだったが、泊まることになっちゃった。  
I intended to go home, but I ended up staying at a hotel.

24. 君の気持ちは分かっているつもり（だ）。(Colloquial)  
I believe I know your feelings well enough.

25. コーヒーを一杯飲んだつもりで、特急電車に乗った。  
I took a limited express train, and I imagined that I had a cup of coffee.

26. よく読んだつもりでした。  
I was convinced that I had read it well.

This usage of つもり is closer to "conviction". ～たつもり shows a defense to one's convictions despite the fact that there is overwhelming evidence to the contrary. This is always why it can sometimes show a selfish side.

27. 切手を貼ったつもりで、手紙をポストに入れてしまった。  
I accidentally put a letter into the postbox having thought I put a stamp on it (but I hadn't).

28. 死んだつもりで生きていこうと決心した。  
I was determined to live on having thought I would die.

29. いとこはもう大人のつもりだな。

My cousin thinks he's already grownup, eh?

30. 「アメリカ人ですか」。「アメリカ人のつもりですけど」。

Are you American? I was American the last time I checked, but...

## はず

The noun はず shows obligation. The speaker may use this pattern to show that he or she is convinced of what should happen based on some sort of reasoning that is either built on personal judgment or on what he or she is quite sure of is the case.

It follows the 連体形 of verbs or adjectives and nouns with の. It is like "supposed to". The negative is はずじゃない. Lastly, はずがない strongly denies when there is neither reason nor basis.

Nouns	本気のはず
形容詞	いいはず
形容動詞	簡単なのはず
Verbs	着くはず

## Examples

31. 田中さんという男は顔見知りのはずだ。

That Mr. Tanaka is supposed to be an acquaintance.

32. <sup>たから</sup> <sup>あ</sup> <sup>か</sup>ここが宝の在り処のはずだ。

This is the whereabouts the treasure is supposed to be.

33. 八時までに宿題をやったはずだよ。

You're supposed to have already finished your homework by 8 o'clock.

34. 手紙はもう着いたはずだ。

The letter is supposed to have already arrived.

35. 彼女は3時に着くはずだった。

She was supposed to arrive at three.

36. 彼はすぐ戻るはずだが。

He's supposed to return soon but.

normal

37. 四日で仕上がるはずだ。

We should finish in four days/on the fourth.

38. ヨーグルトは腸ちょうにいいはずですよ。

Yogurt is supposed to be good for your intestines.

39. 君は彼の居場所いばしょを知ってるはずさ。(Casual)

You ought to know his whereabouts.

40. それは本当であるはずがない。

It cannot be true.

41. 嘘うそをついたはずがありません。

He couldn't have told a lie.

42. 今日家にいるはずだ。

He should be at home today.

43. デパートは8時に開くはずです。

The department store is supposed to open at 8.

44. 「あのレストランはいつも込んでますね」「ええ、でも、お昼前に行けば {込んでいない・人が少ない・空いてい      る} はずですよ。

"That restaurant is always crowded". "Yes, but if you go before noon, it shouldn't be crowded".

45. 「井上さんは来るでしょうか」「ええ、さっき出かけると電話がありましたから、そろそろ {来る・着く} はずですよ」

"Is Inoue coming?". "Yes, I got a call a while ago when we left, and (he/she) should be (coming/getting) here soon".

46a. 生きているということは、体温たいおんは35度から36度の間で一定いっていしているはずですよ。

46b. 生き残るためには、体温を35度から36度の間で保持しなければならない。

In order to live, your body temperature should be stabilized between 35 to 36 degrees.

## ～べきだ

～べきだ is infrequently used. It shows strong subjective opinion of obligation. ～べきだ attaches to the 終止形 of verbs. When ～べきだ attaches to する, you get するべきだ. This also goes for ずる-Verbs.

To ought to feel	感ず（る）べきだ	感じるべきだ	感じべきだ X
To ought to esteem	重んず（る）べきだ	重んじるべきだ	重んじべきだ X

It's normally only used with verbs, but when not it shows a strong sense of "should". ～べし should follow the 連体形 ～かる of 形容詞 and the copula as なる for 形容動詞 and nouns. As for -べきだ, it should follow 形容詞 like in あたらしくあるべきだ and after the copula で ある for 形容動詞 and nouns.

**Negative Note:** The negative form of this pattern should be ～べきじゃない. Don't feel bad if you are corrected for saying ～ないべきだ. ～ざるべし, which would be the predecessor of such a form, has existed in the past. Though the majority of natives believe that ～ないべきだ is grammatically incorrect, in spoken language, it is seen quite a lot. As a student, you should avoid it.

### Examples

47. もっとご両親<sup>りょうしん うやま</sup>を敬う {もの・べき} です。  
You ought to be more respectful to your parents.

**Word Note:** 両親 alone is only used for "one's parents".

48. 遂<sup>つい</sup>に来るべき時が来た。  
At last the time when we're supposed to come has arrived!

49. 絶対に守るべき場所。  
A place that should be protected always.

50. 内<sup>うち</sup>でやるべきだ。  
Our (department/group) should do it.

52. 即座<sup>そくざ</sup>に戦うべきだとする意見<sup>し</sup>が多数を占める。  
The opinion that we should immediately fight holds the majority

53. 学生はまじめに勉強すべきです。  
Students should study seriously.

54. 若い時に、もっと勉強するべきでした。  
I should have studied more when I was young.

normal 彼女を軽視すべきではない。

You shouldn't think lightly of her.

56. 喧嘩<sup>けんか</sup>すべきではなかった。  
I shouldn't have argued.

57. 生きるべきか、死ぬべきか、これが問題点<sup>もんだいてん</sup>だ。  
To be or not or not be, that is the question.

58. 皆<sup>みな</sup>はもっと睡眠<sup>すいみん</sup>を取るべきだ。  
Everyone should get more sleep.

59. 許すべからざる行為。  
An action that should not be allowed/forgiven.

60. もっと本を読むべきです。  
You should read more books.

61. 中国に行くべきではありませんよ。  
You should not go to China.

62. 若い時に、もっと韓国語を勉強するべきだった。  
I should have studied Korean more when I was young.

63. よく考えるべきだ。  
You should consider it well.

64. 政府は失業者<sup>ぜいふたん めんじょ</sup>の税負担を免除すべきだ。  
The government should exempt the tax burden of the unemployed.

65. どう生きるべきか。  
In what way should we live?

**Speech Style/Grammar Note:** In colloquial speech, だ may be dropped in 〜べきだ.

## 第189課: ずつ & わりで

Allocation and proportion is a little tricky. Although these expressions aren't quite different from their English equivalents, there are a few differences that you will need to pay extra attention to.

## The Adverbial Particle ずつ

ずつ is a rather straightforward particle that splits things up into groups, creating ratios. Say you have X number of kids and Y number of mothers to watch the kids. Say there are 100 kids, but you want a chaperon every four kids. To tell the mothers this, you could say 子供4人に1人ずつ、お母さんがついてください。You can do the math as to how many mothers there are.

In 1, of all the 100 kids now in groups of 10, two mothers are allotted to each.

1. 子供10人に、2ずつ、お母さんがついてください?

May two mothers follow with every ten kids?

Think of it as grouping things from the start of a line/process until the end. It is implied that the allocation is repeated so that the intended ratio is carried out in turn.

2. この20冊の雑誌をひとりひとりに一冊ずつ配ってください。

Please pass out to each and every person one of these twenty magazines.

In English, it is more common for someone to say “give three pieces of paper to each kid” than “give three pieces of paper to every ten kids”. We want to make things grammatically singular in number and say “to each **group** of ten kids”. Saying group is not that necessary in Japanese because ずつ does that already.

You can, though, paraphrase ずつ out of the sentence. Compare and contrast the following sets of sentences.

3a. カードはひとり15枚ずつですよ。残りは、ここに伏せておきましょう。

3b. ひとりあたり15枚になるように、カードをみんなに配っていきます。

3a. It'll be fifteen cards to each person. We'll put the rest face down here.

3b. So there will be fifteen cards for each person, we'll pass out the cards to everyone.

4a. 教科書は2冊ずつ、小説は10冊ずつ、雑誌は20冊ずつ、3本の紐<sup>ひも</sup>で括<sup>くく</sup>ってください。

4b. 1括<sup>くく</sup>りにつき、教科書が2冊、小説が10冊、雑誌が20冊になるように、3本の紐<sup>しほ</sup>で縛<sup>しば</sup>ってください。

4a. Bind up textbooks in groups of two, novels in groups of ten, and magazines in groups of twenty with three cords.

4b. To make bundles, bind so that textbooks are in sets of two, novels in ten, and magazines in twenty with three cords.

As you can see, all ずつ does is mark how much the identified recipient(s) are going to get. Some expressions that you will constantly see include 少しずつ (little by little) and わずかずつ (similar to the first but smaller in degree).



5. それらを二個そろずつ揃える。  
To arrange them in twos.
6. 子供が飴を二つあめずつもらいます。  
Kids will receive two candies each.
7. 少しずつ食べた方がいい。  
It's best to eat a little bit at a time.
8. 彼女は少しずつ回復しました。  
She recovered little by little.
9. 2枚ずつ下さい。  
Two sheets each please.
10. 一人ずつバスに乗りなさい。  
Please enter the bus one by one.
11. 毎日数ドルずつ貯たくわえた。  
He put aside a few dollars every day.
12. 昨日は河の水位が少しかわ すいずつ上がっていた。  
The river water level rose little by little yesterday.
13. これらの単語を一言ひとことずつ覚えてください。  
Please learn these words one word at a time.
14. 私は事の真相が少ししんそうずつ分かってきました。  
I came to understand the bottom of it little by little.

**Orthography Note:** づつ is also correct but old-fashioned.

## わりで

～わりで has some interchangeability with づつ. Rather than being involved with the flow of work or time, this pattern just shows a rate/proportion. So, if the numbers of the whole situation are not certainly known, you can't use ～わりで. In spoken speech, however, づつ and ～わりで are often omitted out of the sentence.

15. 1時間に10マイル {のわりで・づつ}、いつ目的地に着きますか。

At ten miles an hour, when will you arrive at your destination?

normal

ずつ still gets used in math texts, but because it needs context to be understood clearly, it is usually limited to the spoken language. ～わりで, on the other hand, clearly states things in more mathematical terms, so it is more indicative of the written language.

## 第190課: The Auxiliary Verb ～ず I

～ず is a Classical Japanese auxiliary verb that is still infrequently used in Modern Japanese. Its use in Modern Japanese is old-fashioned, but it is often used within sentences for poetic effects. ～ず is also in a several grammatical structures and set phrases. Set phrases, after all, is where you can expect to find archaisms in any language. Given its archaic status, it is mainly seen in 書き言葉.

### The Auxiliary Verb ～ず

The function of ～ず is to show negation. This means that it is going to follow the 未然形 of verbs. However, because it is older, it follows the original 未然形. So, for verbs whose 未然形 may have changed over the centuries, it is still the original one that is used with ～ず.

Though extremely infrequent and almost entirely limited to set phrases, given that it has the potential to be attached to the 未然形 of adjectives, the following chart will show how to conjugate with it for both verbs and adjectives.

Class	Example Verb	未然形	未然形＋ず
一段 Verbs	見る	見-	見ず
五段 Verbs	学ぶ	学ば-	学ばず
サ変 Verb	する	せ-	せず
カ変 Verb	来る	来（こ）-	来ず
形容詞	少ない	少なから-	少なからず
形容動詞 (Most Rare)	華麗だ	華麗なら-	華麗ならず

～ず also has three sets of bases, and as a consequence, a rather complicated history behind them. However, luckily for you, only the 連体形 ～ぬ and ～ざる and the 連用形・終止形-ず are ever used today.

The 連体形 ～ぬ is used quite a lot, although it is typically limited to set phrases or more literary settings. It can also be used as the 終止形. ～ん comes from this usage. However, ～ない is said to derive from ～なふ, which came into being in northern Japanese dialects

normal

during the classical period. The ざる-連体形 is even more limited, and it is typically only seen in set phrases. However, it does find itself in the phrase ざるを得ない.

～ずに is just like ～ないで. ～ず as the 連用形 can also function like ～なくて. However, the form ～ずに is going to always be equivalent to ～ないで.

---

### Examples

1. 連絡が取れず、心配しました。(Somewhat formal)  
Without having contact, I got worried.

**Grammar Note:** The above sentence uses えず in the 連用形.

2. 分らず屋 (Set Phrase)  
An obstinate person.

3. 人知れず焦がれる。  
To inwardly yearn for.

**Word Note:** 人知れず literally means "without it being known to people".

4. 新都はいまだ成らず。(Classical)  
The new capital is still not completed.  
From the 方丈記.

5. 絶えざる不安 (Archaic/old-fashioned)  
Anxiety that won't cease

6. 見ざる聞かざる言わざる・見猿聞か猿言わ猿 (Set Phrase)  
See no evil, hear no evil, speak no evil.

**Phrase Note:** This expression is usually turned into a pun about monkeys, especially the ones that enter 温泉 in Japan.

7a. やる瀬ぬ X

7b. やる瀬 (が) ない O  
Helpless

**Grammar Note:** やるせぬ comes from an over-generalization of ～ぬ.

8. 彼は知らずに側にいた。  
He was by my side without knowing it.

normal

9. 生き急がずに、ときには立ち止まってあたりを見回すのもいいよ。  
It's also good to just stop once and awhile and look around and not live one's life so fast.

10. 何も書かん。(Slang; dialectical)  
I won't write anything.

11. それは開いた口が塞がらぬことだ。(ちょっと古風)  
That's a jaw-dropping situation.

12. **取りも直さず**やりくりが大変になるということだ。(Set phrase)  
Which is to say, managing will become challenging.

13. 怖いものもあらず。(Archaic)  
To not even have things one is scared of.

14a. 好ましからざる状態 (古風な書き言葉)

14b. 好ましくない状態 (話し言葉)  
An unfavorable situation

15. 瀧野は金彌の片足を拾い上げて、土踏まずを掴んだ。  
Takino picked up one of Kanaya's legs and gripped her foot's arch.  
From 童謡 by 川端康成.

16. 雪を積らせぬためであろう、湯槽から溢れる湯を 俄 づくりの溝で宿の壁沿いにめぐらせ  
てあるが、玄関先では浅い泉水のように拡がっていた。  
It must be because they don't allow snow to pile up, but the hot water flowing from the tubs  
was made to encircle the inn along the walls in a make-shift ditch, and it stretched like  
shallow spring water at the entrance.  
From 雪国 by 川端康成.

**Grammar Note:** せぬ is not しない in this sentence. Rather, 積らせぬ is a negative form of the causative form of 積る.

17. それにしても、さっき、吉田と向き合った自分は、いかにも惨めに見えたことだろうと  
思うと、言いしれぬ侘しさが心を冷やしていく。  
Even so, as I thought how wretched I, who had been face to face with Yoshida, a while ago,  
indescribable dreariness cooled my mind off..  
From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

18. このため石井委員長は、「内閣が取った措置は参議院予算委員会を愚弄するものである  
と同時に、憲法の精神に反しており、断じて容認するわけにはいかず、予算委員長として

normal

政府に<sup>もうせい</sup>猛省を<sup>うなが</sup>促す」と批判したうえで、委員会を<sup>きゅうけい</sup>休憩にしました。

As so, Chairman Ishi'i put the committee on recess upon criticizing that "the measures that the cabinet took mock the House of Chancellors Budget Committee and at the same time are against the spirit of the constitution, and being absolutely impossible to approve, as the budget chairman, I urge to the government to reconsider seriously".

From NHK <sup>わ</sup>区割り法案 参院否決と見なす動議提出 2013年6月24日

**Part of Speech Note:** Set expressions like 土踏まず have gone from being verbal in nature to referring to the none that it represents this. This word means "arch of the foot".

19. だが、さしのべられる手に応えた<sup>向こうみず</sup>がいた。

But, there was a foolhardy person that responded to the hand extended.

From 野生の風 by 村山由佳.

**Word Note:** In the sentence above, 向こう見ず is used as a noun, and in other contexts it can act as a 形容動詞.

20. だから<sup>心ならずも</sup>、最後の大事な仕事を片づけることができなかったのだ。

Against his heart's intentions, however, he couldn't finish the final, important job.

From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

**Phrase Note:** <sup>心ならずも</sup> is a combination なり, the Classical copula, + ず + も, which also follows ず in other set phrases such as 図らずも (unexpectedly).

21. 君はなんといってもただの未成熟な、寸<sup>足らず</sup>の幻想にすぎないわけだからね。

No matter what you may say, it's because you're no more than a lacking, immature illusion.

From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

**Phrase Note:** 寸足らず is a set phrase that functions as a 形容動詞 or attribute that takes の. 寸 is a traditional unit of measurement equivalent to 3.03 cm. ~足らず is a suffix that means "just under", and it gives a strong sense of lacking as the verb 足る in the negative suggests. In this sentence, 寸足らず stresses the inferiority of the addressee.

22. 村は<sup>ちんじゅ</sup>鎮守の<sup>すぎばやし</sup>杉林の<sup>かげ</sup>陰に半ば隠れているが、自動車で十分<sup>とうか</sup>足らずの<sup>こぼ</sup>停車場の<sup>まばた</sup>灯火は、寒さのため<sup>こぼ</sup>びいんぴいんと音を立てて<sup>まばた</sup>毀れそうに瞬いていた。

The village was half hidden by its Shinto shrine grove, and the lamplight from the train station under ten minutes away by car flickered and made a great noise due to the cold like it was going to give way.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

23. 細かい手の器用なさばきは耳に覚えていず、ただ音の感情が分かる程度の島村は、駒子  
にはちょうどよい聞き手なのであろう。

Her fine, clever hand movements couldn't be felt, but Shimura, who could only understand the emotion to the sound, was surely just the right listener to Komako.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

**Grammar Note:** Typically, いる + ず is おらず, which utilizes the humble form to prevent the phrase from sounding odd, but the form いず still exists. This use is rather rare, so it is best for you to not use it. However, it does exist. So, don't get confused when it does appear.

24. 宴会では半玉が太鼓を叩いて踊らねばならぬので、その五六人がこの家へ入らぬ日はなく、時折の滞在の間に、瀧野は彼女等の顔を見覚えてしまっていた。

Since young geisha's have to beat taiko and dance at banquets, there wasn't a day those five, six people didn't come in this house, and while they stayed occasionally, and Takino ended up remembering their faces.

From 童謡 by 川端康成.

25. この家へ来なければお茶を引いていると芸者の言うのが、満更お世辞でないほど、町へ来るお客の大半はここ一軒に取られてしまうのだとすると、女中の言葉も全く信じられぬではなかった。

If you suppose that the majority of the guests that come to the town are taken in this one place to the point that what the geisha said about if she didn't come to this house that she was on break is not completely flattering, one couldn't completely disbelieve the maid's words too.

From 童謡 by 川端康成.

**Grammar Note:** Notice how the 連体形-ぬ is functioning as a nominal without the aid of の.

26. わが信ずる運命を手向け、死によって互みの悲劇を理解しようがために、こりずまに剣を交わして戦ったのだ。

Offering the destiny I believed in, I incorrigibly fought and crossed swords in order to understand the mutual tragedy by death.

From 軽王子と衣通姫 by 三島由紀夫.

**Grammar Note:** The ま in こりずま is a suffix used to show a certain condition.

27. 問うは一時の恥問わぬは末代の恥。(Proverb)

It is better to ask and be embarrassed than not ask and never know.

28. 小六が帰りがけに茶の間を覗いたら、御米は何にもしず、に、長火鉢に寄り掛かってい

As Koroku was about to go home, he took a glance around the living room, and Oyome was leaning against an oblong brazier doing nothing.

From 門 by 夏目漱石.

**Dialect Note:** We can assume that しず to is an old, dialectical variant of せずに.

29. きつからず緩からずで休憩をするところを見つけられず、辿った道を振り返った。  
Though (the journey was) neither harsh or smooth, having not been able to find a place to rest, I turned around to where I had come.

30. 天を恨みず人を尤めず

To not spite heaven and fault no one; to recover by reflecting on oneself

**Conjugation Note:** 恨む・怨む used to be a 上二段 verb. What this means is that the bases of conjugation alternated between i and u. So, the 未然形 would have been うらみ. Because it looked like a 五段 verb, it eventually became one. Thus, in Modern Japanese, 怨まず exists. However, set phrases cannot be changed.

## Speech Modals with -ず

### ～ずにはいられない

～ずにはいられない means "can not help but..." Variants of ～ずにはいられない include ～ずにはすまない, ～ずにはおかない, and ～ずにはすまさない.

31. 勉強せずに、受験したから、落第しちゃった。

Because I took the exam without studying, I ended up failing it.

**Grammar Note:** You must use the 未然形-せ- of する.

32. 心配せずにはいられない。

I couldn't help but worry.

33. 懲らしめてやらずにはおかない。

I couldn't help but give him punishment.

34. 怒らせずにはすまないでしょう。

You probably can't help but get angry, right?

35. 泣き出さずにはすまさない。

I can't help but cry profusely.

## ～ずと

～ずと is a variant of ないでも and is often seen in the set phrase 言わずと知（し）れた. It is classical, so it would only be seen in such set phrases in the spoken language. Otherwise, it would be limited to writing styles and situations suitable for 古語的な書き言葉.

36. 言わずと知れたことだ。

It's an obvious thing.

37. 文句を言わずと話を聞け。

Listen even if you don't argue.

---

## ～に過ぎず

This is merely a form of ～に過ぎない, which is used to show that something doesn't even pass a certain extent.

38. したがって、現代かなづかい論者の一人である吉川幸次郎博士が、日本語は発音をそのままに表記し得ることを大きな特徴とし、かつその表記法の歴史は、この特徴を生かしつつ発展して来たと述べていることを引用し、発音をそのままに表記し得ることは、とりもおさず表音式であり、表音文字＝表音式であって、現代語に基づくことと表音式との差は五十歩百歩に過ぎず、現代かなづかいが、もともと表音的性格を有している仮名の線を、さらに徹底せしめたものであってみれば、現代かなづかいは表音式だと言い切ってさしつかえないと思うと述べている福田発言は、正しい判断と言ってよい。

Hence, Professor Kojiro Yoshikawa, one advocate of Modern Kana Orthography, cites that Japanese has had the great characteristic of being transcribed phonetically and the history of its orthography has developed this characteristic and capitalized on it, which is to say that being able to transcribe the language's pronunciation phonetically is a phonetic system (phonetic characters = a phonetic system), and with there being a scant difference between basing it on the Modern Language and a phonetic system, Fukuda's statement which states his belief that "if Modern Kana Orthography tries to be something that furthermore completes the line of Kana which originally possesses a phonetic nature, Modern Japanese Orthography without objection should be called a phonetic system" may very well be a correct judgment.

From 国語国字の根本問題 By 渡部晋太郎.

The main reason for choosing such a long sentence is that it shows how sentences in Japanese can get larger and larger the same way they can in English. Also, there are several uses of ～ず.

normal



39. あやつは一介の庶民にすぎぬものだ。(ちょっと古風)  
He is no more than a mere commoner.

---

### ～に忍びず

～に忍びず means "cannot stand to". It is synonymous to ～に耐えられない. ～に忍びない is another more common form.

40. 見るに<sup>さんじょう</sup>忍びぬ惨状だった。  
It was a sight too gruesome to stand seeing.

41. 物を捨てるのは忍びない。  
I can't stand throwing things away.

42. 捨てるには忍ばないと、彼はポケット<sup>い</sup>に入れた。  
Not able to stand throwing it away, he put it in his pocket.

---

### ～ずじまい

This is a particularly odd expression. As you can imagine by looking at it, it is simply expressing a circumstance of ending up not doing something. This is actually occasionally used in the spoken language, and it is often treated as creative language. It is rather unique that voicing occurs with しまい.

43. 食べてしまおう、言えずじまい。  
I'll eat (them) all, not able to say a word.  
From Chocolate Prayer by DIV

---

### ～ならいざ知らず

This pattern means that if X is the case, something might be so, but since the circumstances are completely different, so are the results. It often follows words of extremes like 神、大昔、赤ん坊、ヒマラヤ、etc. What follows is something opposite of it, showing a sense of dissatisfaction or astonishment.

44. 安い<sup>やす</sup>ホテルならいざ知らず、一流<sup>いちりゅう</sup>ホテルでこんなにサービスが悪い<sup>わる</sup>なんてとても信じ<sup>しん</sup>られないよね。  
I don't know about cheap hotels, but I can't even believe how awful this service is from a first-class hotel.

45. 3歳さんさいの子供こどもならいざいしらず、大人おとながこんなことを知らないなんておかしい。  
I don't know about a three year old, but it's strange that an adult doesn't know something like this.

46. 新人しんじんならいざ知らず、君きみがあんなことをするなんて。  
I don't know about newcomers, but you doing something like that...

47. 小さい子供ちい こどもならいざ知らず、お年頃としごろの子供達こどもたちにはつまらないかもしれない。  
I don't know about small children, but (this) might be boring to older children.

48. プロ選手せんしゅならいざ知らず、アマチュア選手せんしゅには無理むりでしょう。  
I don't know about pro-athletes, but it's probably too much for an amateur athlete.

## 第191課: Pronouns III: 再帰代名詞

Japanese 再帰代名詞 *equate* to English "reflexive pronouns". However, unlike the reflexive pronouns of English and other European languages, these Japanese words are far more complex. Usages vary and are heavily reliant on context for correct interpretation.

The first problem that you have to come to grips with is the sheer number of "reflexive pronouns" in Japanese: 自分、自分自身、自身、自己、自体、自ら、自ずから、己、and 各々. Though this list may appear exhaustive, it does not include words with reflexive elements in them or dialectical variants.

**漢字 Note:** There are other words with 自- with a meaning of "own". Ex. 自宅 = "One's house".

### 自分(じぶん)

自分 causes linguists on both sides of the Pacific to constantly write on the so-called long-distance reflexive pronouns of Japanese. If you ever look into this matter in greater academic depth, this term will come up. However, even without any linguistic knowledge, with what is to be discussed, this term will inevitably hone things together in your mind.

---

#### Source of Confusion

自分 has **no exact** English equivalent. Most textbooks say it means "(one)self", "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "themselves", "itself", etc. depending on context. This, though, is oversimplified. How do you know which is meant with just a sentence? What if there are multiple things 自分 could refer to?

This is where long-distance reflexive properties and knowledge of clause structures and particles come into play. For starters, consider the following sentence:

1a. 自分が馬鹿者だって知らないんだ。

From an English perspective where an anaphor, a "-self" word, must have an antecedent (something before them) to refer to, 自分 having no subject to refer to and being marked by が as the subject is problematic! As, additional information can be easily dropped in a Japanese sentence, long-distance co-referencing comes into play.

自分 can refer to a subject mentioned earlier. In the alteration of the previous example, it is clear that 自分 = 彼女ら自身 (they themselves).

1b. 彼女らは自分が馬鹿者だって知らないんだ。

---

### **Scenarios with Multiple Potential Readings**

There are some cases where you need the full discourse to conclude the meaning of 自分. Even with context, in sentences such as below, there really are multiple, variable readings that you can derive and not be wrong. In such situations, even for native speakers, explaining may be the only way to negate ambiguity as seen below.

2. 岸田さんは、「小田原さんが『自分は頭がいい』と言った」と言った。

It could be that Odawara was referring to Kishida. Or, he could have been just talking about himself. Regardless of what you think is the most probable interpretation, without any other information, it's not certain.

---

### **Single Interpretation Scenarios**

Consider the following with only one possible interpretation. Regardless whether there is ambiguity in what 自分 refers to or not or how long the sentence is, it still refers to something specific.

3. 畑中先生は憲太にとって自分の親のような存在だった。

Hatanaka Sensei was to Kenta like his own parent.

4. 清美は、実際としては、春彦に何を白状させたというのではなく、ただ自分の推測でものを言っているだけだ。

As for Kiyomi, it's not what did she make Haruhiko confess; it's just her own conjecture.

In Ex. 3, 畑中先生 is still the topic. She has an existence of [憲太にとって自分の親のような].  
normal

We know that 自分 doesn't refer to her because にとって provides an explanatory sense to the situation, negating the other possible reference, 憲太. Without 憲太にとって, 自分 would refer to 畑中先生.

In Ex. 4, 自分 refers to 清美. This is because [春彦から何を白状させたという] is embedded in the nominal phrase marked by の, which could be replaced by any other noun phrase you'd like.

---

### Unlikely Ambiguous Scenarios

In this final example, it would be odd for the command to be for the listener to retrospect on what the *speaker* has done. However, this reading could exist given enough context. However, if this is all that is said, you can safely assume that the only plausible reading is the one given in translation.

5. 君は、自分のことを反省しなさい。  
Look back on what you yourself have done.

One could potentially bring up counterexamples that defy minor details of what has been said thus far, but it is clear that context decides. Even if this context still doesn't solve everything, just like how we deal with ambiguity in English, you either make the most logical assumption of what it means or seek clarification if possible.

---

### More Examples

6. 自分でやりなさい。  
Do it yourself.

7a. 自分自身が自分であるために  
7b. 自分が自分自身であるために (もっと自然)  
In order for one to be oneself

8. 若いうちに自分のしたいことをしておくといい。  
It is good for you to do what you want to do while you're still young.

9a. 多くの人は、自分の体を大切にすべきだと主張している。(もっと自然な言い方)  
9b. 自分の体を大切にすべきだと主張する人は多い。(あまり使われていない言い方)  
A lot of people stress that everyone should take good care of themselves.

10. 彼女は鏡で長いこと自分を見つめていた。  
She was staring at herself in the mirror for a long time.

11. {各人・自分} の責任において  
At one's own risk

**Meaning Note:** It is not proper in honorifics to use 自分 to mean "I", which is extremely common in places like the 関西弁. This colloquial usage appears to have risen from the practice of soldiers having to refer to themselves as such. It can also confusingly still be used to refer to the listener.

12. 自分にやらせてください。  
Please let me do it.

13. この事実にあいして君が自分達を如何ように裁いてくれても自分たちは勿論甘受する。  
To this truth, no matter how you judge us, we will of course put up with it.  
From 友情 by 武者小路実篤.

**Grammar Note:** As the sentence shows, 自分達 also exists.

---

## 自分自身

自分自身 is a more potent way of saying "oneself". You can see 自身 after other pronouns. So, you can get 私自身、彼自身、彼女自身, etc. Don't confuse 自身 with 自信, which means self-confidence.

14. 自分自身のことをしろ。  
Do your own thing!

15. 自分自身の言葉で言ったほうがいいんじゃない？  
Isn't it best for you to say it in your own words?

16. ぼくは自信なんかない。  
I don't have any confidence (in myself).

## 自己

自己 = Self. It is used in many phrases and is the choice for translating instances of "self-" in English.

17. 自己紹介させていただきます。  
Allow me to introduce myself.

18. その選手は、自己記録を更新しましたよ。

That athlete beat her own record!

normal

自己防衛	Self-defence	自己批判	Self-criticism	自己矛盾	Self-contradiction
自己紹介	Self-introduction	自己犠牲	Self-sacrifice	自己採点	Self-rating
自己評価	Self-evaluation	自己中心	Self-centered	自己主張	Self-assertion

## 自体

This word refers to "itself", but it can also seldom refer to one's own body or be used as an adverb meaning on the lines of *そもそも*.

19. 考えそれ自体は、悪くありません。  
The idea itself isn't bad.

20. それ自体は毒じゃない。  
It itself isn't a poison.

21. 家自体が古い。  
The house itself is old.

22. 口答えすること自体そもそも間違いだろう。  
Talking back in of itself in the first place was a mistake, no?

## 自ら & 自ずから

As you would imagine, these are native reflexive pronouns. The first is read as *みずから*. The second is read as *おのずから*. So, be very careful about that. They're not used in any colloquial sense like *自分*. However, the overall problems of interpretation are still very relevant. In an adverbial sense they can be used like *自分で*. In this case, though, there is no particle involved. These words have the same nuance effect as *自分自身*.

23a. 天は自ら助くるものを助く。(Proverb)

23b. 天は {自ら・自分 (自身) を} 助けるものを助ける。(Modern Japanese Equivalent)  
Heaven helps those who help themselves.

24. 彼自ら東京へ行った。  
He went to Tokyo himself.

25. その事実は自ずから明らかだ。  
The fact speak for themselves.

**Nuance Note:** *自ずから* is often seen as *自ずと* and both are used in a sense that the

normal

situation and hand is naturally so.

## 己 & 各々

己 has always been an important reflexive pronoun in Japanese. Although now it can be used as a second person pronoun slur, you still see it in a lot of old, set phrases. The root is おの-, which can be seen doubled in the expression 各々 (each and every). Although there are a lot of possible set and at times very archaic expressions that use these words, only truly relevant examples will be brought up.

26. 己を知れ。

Know thyself.

27. 己の説くところを励行せよ。

Practice what you preach.

28. 己が誰なのか知れ。

Know who you are.

29a. 己をもって他人を律するな。

29a. 自分の基準で他人を律するな。(もっと自然)

Don't just others by yourself.

30. 容疑者がおのおの違った説明をした。

The suspects each gave a different story.

31. どこの学校でも新入生がそうであるように、私は毎日新鮮な気持ちで通いながらも、とりとめのない思いがしていた。知り人は鶴川であった。どうしても鶴川とばかり話すようになる。それでは折角新らしい世界へ出て来た意味がないのを、鶴川のほうでも感じているらしく、数日たつうちに、休み時間にはわざと二人が離れて、**おのがじし**新らしい友を開拓しようとした。しかし吃りの私には、そういう勇気もなかったので、鶴川の友が増えるにつれ、私はますます孤りになった。

Like a new student in any school, while I went with fresh feelings each day, there was something I couldn't bring myself to. Tsurukawa was my acquaintance. I was to no matter what only talk with Tsurukawa. With even Tsurukawa sensing that there was no meaning to coming into this long awaited new world, in a matter of days, we purposely separated during break to each find friends. But, with my stutter, as Tsurukawa's friends grew in number, I became ever more alone.

From 金閣寺 by 三島由紀夫.

**Word Note:** おのがじし is an archaism meaning それぞれに.

**Spelling Note:** In Ex. 31, there are some interesting spellings. 独り is written instead as 孤り. Also, 新しい is written as 新らしい. This is because 送り仮名 usage was not standardized at the time. Lastly, although its not exceptional, 吃り is read as どもり.

## 第192課: Numbers VI: Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers, ( じゅん 順 ) じょすうし 序数詞, in English end in -th with exception to first, second, and third. Japanese doesn't have true ordinal number forms like English, but there are several ways to make such expressions. Decisions such as which prefix and or suffix should be used and what kind of number should be used, Sino-Japanese and native, cause nuance differences that shouldn't be overlooked.

Practicality is also a factor, but this is no reason to ignore sections of this lesson. As the words “ordinal” and 順序 suggest, ordinal numbers show ordering. In English they're used in giving the date, century, fractions, generations, etc. These usages, though, are taken over in Japanese by counters. However, in phrases such as “first intersection”, ordinal number expressions are still used in Japanese.

You'll find that ordinal number-like expressions in Japanese have limitations, and they aren't quite straightforward. This lesson will try to give guidelines as to how exactly they are used, so pay close attention to details.

### The Ordinal Number Patterns

#### 第 #

With Sino-Japanese numbers, the prefix 第～ can be used, which brings a considerable level of formality. For instance, 第二 means “second”. You see it a lot in things like 第二に (secondly) and 第二の人生 (second life).

You also see it used with counter expressions and nouns afterward like 第1課 (Lesson 1), 第一位 (first place), and 第二の論点 (second point of issue). 第 # is extremely limited, though. It is true that you hear 第一 and 第二 used as adverbs in listing points. And, you can see 第 # のNoun all the time for any number. However, when you pass two, using 第 # in an adverbial sense (firstly, secondly) becomes unnatural. As such, to clearly use this pattern adverbially, the particle に becomes necessary. So, rather than stating a third point with 第三, do so with 第三に.

#### i. 第一の日本の技術者

The foremost engineers of Japan

normal ー (、) 説明しても誰も聞いてくれないんだ。



First(ly), even if I explained, no one'll listen to me.

iii. 第三に、会社員が自分のゴミを捨てなければならないことになりました。  
Thirdly, it has been decided that employees must throw away their own trash.

This does not negate the grammaticality of phrases like 第三の問題. In English this would be "third problem", but the Japanese, like the English, is ambiguous on whether the problem number is 3 or whether it is simply the third problem being touched on.

Even so, this is more indicative of written Japanese. In regards to proper nouns and this pattern, you can see things like 第一ホテル and 第一製薬, but you don't see any other number with them unless if it were a play on words. So, typically, you would never see something like 第三ホテル.

When do you distinguish this from just a # + Counter? This is a very difficult question that really depends on what you're using. For instance, when counting floors of a building, you simply use the counter ～階. If you were to use 第, it wouldn't quite be the same sense of the word. For instance, you can see things like 第2階差数列 (second differences sequence).

### (第)#番

Then, there is the counter ～番. 番 itself is a noun for "turn/order/place". When used as a counter, it is equivalent to "No.". One instance that these are used is the parts of a hearing test. This is also used for giving the order of those that win a lottery. So, you get something like 二番は彼です.

This, again, shows the number that something has. For instance, if a street is named with a number, for instance First Avenue/Avenue 1, then its Japanese equivalent would be 一番街. Like the English expression, however, #番街 is used for avenues/streets with a lot of people and or businesses.

It is possible to see 第 with such expressions, but the sense of there being a "No." is still there. For instance, 第2番の交差点 is a slightly uncommon/unnatural way of saying "Intersection No. 2". It is slightly more common to see this without the 第.

Another practical usage is #番線. This is used to mentioning the number of a train line, not the number of a train (列車番号). 番地 is used for house/property number, and unlike these other examples, it is also practically used with large numbers. So, it is possible to see 1000番地. In short, this is used when there is number posted on something.

There is also the usage of 一番 as "most". However, past 1, you would have to use #番目. So, the second most high-ranking person would be 2番目に偉い人. It's not right to use 2番

here. Now, having said this, what would happen if in regards to a lottery you were to say 一番目が私、2番目は彼です? Well, then it would sound like you're talking about different lottery drawings, not separate drawings after each other in a single event.

The confusion in semantics can cause natives to question the legitimacy of phrases such as the last one. This is why thoughtful consideration of detail and awareness of context is so important to discourse in any language.

---

### #番目

Then, there is #番目. This has a very distinct spatial/temporal sense about it. It can also be used in sense where it's not that one is counting it. It's just factually the case. For instance, in reference to the third hurricane to reach the Gulf of Mexico, one would use 3番目. This, in comparison with the next option, has no real number limit. This is also of the same vein as #Counter+目. For instance, the third book is 3冊目 (の本) .

---

### Native Number + つ + 目

The most common in the spoken language is definitely “Native number + つ + 目”. After nine, it is replaced with #番目・#個目, the latter specifically counting things of course. This pattern definitely has the greater sense of counting, despite the fact that all of these patterns are ordinal number patterns.

There isn't necessarily a strong relation to temporal/spatial distance. It could be in reference to things. Although #番目 can be used with things too, it's hard to pull away a sense of distance or time from it. For instance, 2番目の駅 is something you could definitely hear when being told how to get somewhere. From where you and the explainer are standing, there is a spatial sense of two train stations away from you. Although you could definitely hear 2つ目の駅, one could say that this has broader implications and has no relation to distance, and if it were used in the same instance as above, that's coincidental.

A common question that is often brushed off by the most sincere natives is the existence of 十目. Sadly, it does exist in rare phrases like 四目十目, which comes from a superstition of an age difference between a married couple 3 to 9 years bad, so they get rounded to 4 and 10 instead. This, though, is homophonous with the phrase 夜目遠目 (being seen in the distance).

Practically, though, yes, the pattern “Native number + つ + 目” ends at 9. Even so, if you were to say 9つの信号 (ninth light) in giving instructions, you might cause the traveler some anxiety as to how far away something is. Had you said 9番の信号, it may be next to you if

that's the name of it. Or, if you had said 9番目の信号, the light is no doubt in a series, but the sense of a number limit is nonexistent.

In the past, native numbers past ten could be made like “とお あまり #つ”, but this has been reduced to rare instances and Classical Japanese. You can still sometimes see the original native number framework outside of 1~10, はたち, in things like 三十一文字, which is used to mean Waka/Tanka poetry. Another fun fact is that 一目小僧 actually means “one-eyed boy phantom”. Of all things...lol

---

## Examples

Although the number of examples for this lesson is currently insufficient, given the detailed explanations above, ordinal number expressions should make a whole lot more sense to you.

だい か い め じ っ け ん  
1. 第1回目の実験

The first test/experiment

か  
2. 第7課

Lesson 7

し あ い  
3. 第1試合

Match one

し ょ う  
4. 第5章

Chapter 5

なん ぱ ん め へ や  
5. 何番目の部屋ですか。

What room (number)?

**Sentence Note:** This is appropriate when you are not referring to the room number plaque but the location of the room. If you want the number, you could ask 部屋は何番ですか。

6. あなたは何番目の訪問者ですか。

What number visitor are you?

**Exception Note:** 第4日 is exceptionally read as だいいっか.

たい かい じ ゃ ん か め  
7. 大会10日目

10th day of the tournament

ひ と め つ き  
8. 一つ目の月

The first month

ま く だ い ば  
9. 第2幕第3場

Act II, Scene iii

れ い め  
10. 7例目

Seventh example

れ ん し ょ う め  
11. 3連勝目

The third straight win

れ つ め せ き  
12. 前から2列目の席に座る。

To sit in a seat in the second row from the front.

13. 上から3段目

Third from the top

いち ぎ ょ う め ひ だ り も じ  
14. 一行目の左から五つ目の文字は

ご しょ く  
誤植です。

The fifth letter starting from the first line

is a misprint.

## 第193課: Counters VIII: 基, 滴, 票, 件, 行, 画, 種 (類) , 脚, 着, 膳, 貫, 対, 男, & 女

In this installation on counters, you will learn about yet another fifteen counters to expand your knowledge on how to count even more things.

### Counters to be Covered

1.    ～基
2.    ～滴
3.    ～票
4.    ～件
5.    ～行 (ぎょう・こう)
6.    ～画
7.    ～種 (類)
8.    ～脚
9.    ～着
10.  ～膳
11.  ～貫
12.  ～輪
13.  ～対
14.  ～男
15.  ～女

## Intermediate Counters

### ～基

The counter ～<sup>き</sup>基 counts a variety of things that are installed and or placed somewhere. Common things it is used for include dams, elevators, grave(stone)s, wreaths, reactors, CPUs, large machinery, lanterns, etc.

1	いっき	2	にき	3	さんき	4	よんき
5	ごき	6	ろっき	7	ななき	8	はっき
9	きゅうき	10	じゅっき じっき	100	ひゃっき	?	なんき

normal

まち ことし ふうりよくはつでんき じゅっ き せっち  
1. この町は今年、風力発電機を10基設置した。  
This town installed ten wind turbine generators this year.

いっ き けんせつ にじゅうねんいじょう  
2. ダムを1基建設するのに20年以上かかります。  
It takes over twenty years to construct one dam.

こうせいのおう シーピーユー に き つ  
3. 高性能のCPUを2基積んでいます。  
It has two high-performance CPUs loaded.

---

### ～滴

てき  
The counter ～滴 is used to count drops of liquid.

1	いってき	2	にてき	3	さんてき	4	よんてき
5	ごてき	6	ろくてき	7	ななてき	8	はってき
9	きゅうてき	10	じゅってき じってき	100	ひゃくてき	?	なんてき

みず いってき はい  
4. 水が1滴も入っていないんですよ。  
There's not a single drop of water in it.

ゆ じゅってき た  
5. ラー油を10滴かけて食べてみました。  
I tried eating with 10 drops of Chinese chili oil on it.

ゆび ほ な じ  
6. 指にオイルをつけて、頬っぺたに馴染ませてください。  
Put the oil on your finger and then thoroughly blend it into your cheeks.

---

### ～票

ひょう  
The counter ～票 counts votes. The word for vote also happens to be 票.

1	いっぴょう	2	にひょう	3	さんびょう さんびょう	4	よんひょう
---	-------	---	------	---	----------------	---	-------

normal

					さんひょう		
5	ごひょう	6	ろっぴょう	7	ななひょう	8	はっぴょう はちひょう
9	きゅうひょう	10	じゅっぴょう じっぴょう	100	ひゃっぴょう	?	なんぴょう なんびょう なんひょう

しんじん だんせいこうほしゃ いっぴょう かくとく  
7. 新人の男性候補者が1 票も獲得できなかった。  
The rookie male candidate was unable to acquire a single vote.

さいしゅうとうひょう ろくじゅうろくひょうかくとく  
8. 最終投票では、リオデジャネイロが 66 票獲得した。  
In the final vote, Rio de Janeiro acquired 66 votes.

わたなべし ごまんよんせんろっぴゃくさんじゅうにひょうかくとく  
9. 渡辺氏が5万 4632 票獲得しました。  
Mr. Watanabe acquired 54,632 votes.

## ～件

けん  
The counter 件 counts situations/incidents. This can extend to accidents, bugs (IT), cases (of a disease, etc.), inquiries, applications, search results, responses, news articles, etc.

1	いっけん	2	にけん	3	さんけん	4	よんけん
5	ごけん	6	ろっけん	7	ななけん	8	はちけん はっけん
9	きゅうけん	10	じゅっけん じっけん	100	ひゃっけん	?	なんけん

しゅとけんない ことしじゅう じんしんじこ さんじゅうよんけんはっせい  
10. 首都圏内では、今年中に人身事故が 34 件発生しています。  
In greater Tokyo, there have been 34 accidents resulting in injury/death during this year.

かながわけん どうよう ひが い にじゅっけん はっせい  
11. 神奈川県でも、同様の被害が 20 件くらい発生しています。  
Even in Kanagawa Prefecture, there have been about 20 similar cases of damage.

ひゃっけん こ  
12. 検出したバグはすでに100件を超えています。

normal

Bugs detected have already surpassed 100.

### ～行（ぎょう・こう）

When read as **ぎょう**, ～行 is used to count lines of text. When read as **こう**, it is used to count banks. However, the phrase <sup>いっこう</sup>一行 can also be used to mean “group of people/line of...”

～ぎょう

1	いちぎょう	2	にぎょう	3	さんぎょう	4	よんぎょう
5	ごぎょう	6	ろくぎょう	7	ななぎょう	8	はちぎょう
9	きゅうぎょう	10	じゅうぎょう	100	ひゃくぎょう	?	なんぎょう

～こう

1	いっこう	2	にこう	3	さんこう	4	よんこう
5	ごこう	6	ろっこう	7	ななこう	8	<b>はちこう</b> はっこう
9	きゅうこう	10	<b>じゅっこう</b> じっこう	100	ひゃっこう	?	なんこう

13. <sup>こくゆう</sup>スペイン<sup>にこう</sup>国有の<sup>がつぱい</sup>2行が合併することで<sup>ごうい</sup>合意しました。  
Two of Spain's national-owned banks have agreed to merge.

14. <sup>かみなり</sup>雷に<sup>おどろ</sup>驚いた<sup>いっこう</sup>一行の<sup>うま</sup>馬が<sup>ぼうそう</sup>暴走して<sup>おんなひとり</sup>女一人を<sup>ふ</sup>踏み<sup>ころ</sup>殺した。  
A troupe of horses scared by thunder rampaged and trampled one woman to death.

15. <sup>にぎょうめ</sup>2行目の<sup>もじすう</sup>文字数を教えてください。  
Please tell me the number of characters in the second line.

16. <sup>まるまるしいっこう</sup>〇〇氏<sup>ちゅうごくとうほくぶ</sup>一行が中国<sup>しざつ</sup>東北部へ<sup>い</sup>視察（し）に行きました。  
Mr. ##'s entourage went to observe Northeast China.

17. <sup>にせんはちねん</sup>2008年には、<sup>きんゆうきかん</sup>アメリカの金融機関のうち<sup>すく</sup>少なくとも<sup>いっこう</sup>1行が<sup>はたん</sup>破綻してしまっった。  
In 2008, of the financial institutions in America, at least one bank went into bankruptcy.

normal

---

## ～画

The counter 画<sup>かく</sup> counts the number of strokes in a 漢字. It can also be used to count plots/lots of land. For this latter meaning, it is usually seen as 区画.

### ～かく

1	いっかく	2	にかく	3	さんかく	4	よんかく
5	ごかく	6	ろっかく	7	ななかく	8	はっかく はちかく
9	きゅうかく	10	じゅうかく じっかく	11	じゅういっかく	?	なんかく

### ～くかく

1	いっくかく	2	にくかく	3	さんくかく	4	よんくかく
5	ごくかく	6	ろくかく	7	ななくかく	8	はちくかく はっくかく
9	きゅうくかく	10	じゅうくかく じっくかく	100	ひゃくくかく	?	なんくかく

18. 「ㄣ」は3画<sup>さんかく か</sup>で書きます。

“ㄣ” is written with 3 strokes.

19. 韓国<sup>かんこく</sup>の「韓」<sup>かん</sup>を 17 画<sup>じゅうななかく か</sup>で書<sup>し</sup>くって知<sup>し</sup>ってる？

Did you know that the “kan” in “Kankoku” is written with 17 strokes?

20. このホテルはバンクーバー<sup>かんこうちいき</sup>の観光<sup>や</sup>地域<sup>く</sup>から約 15 区画<sup>かく</sup>離れた場所<sup>こうにゆう</sup>にあります。

This hotel is at a place 15 blocks removed from the tourist area of Vancouver.

21. 分譲<sup>ぶんじょうち</sup>地の 1 (区) 画<sup>いっく</sup>を購<sup>かく</sup>入<sup>こうにゆう</sup>する予定<sup>よてい</sup>です。

I intend to purchase one section of a lot.

---

## ～種 (類)



The counter ～種 (類) counts species/kinds.

1	いっしゅ (るい)	2	にしゅ (るい)	3	さんしゅ (るい)
4	よんしゅ (るい)	5	ごしゅ (るい)	6	ろくしゅ (るい)
7	ななしゅ (るい)	8	はちしゅ (るい) はっしゅるい	9	きゅうしゅ (るい)
10	じゅっしゅ (るい) じっしゅ (るい)	100	ひゃくしゅ (るい)	?	なんしゅ (るい)

22. 支払いプランが3種類あります。  
There are three types of payment plans.

23. この2種 (類) の象の化石は北海道でも見つっている。  
Fossils of these two species of elephant have also been found in Hokkaido.

24. 日本固有の犬種は全部で6種あります。  
There is a total of six species of dog unique to Japan.

## ～脚

The counter ～脚 counts chairs, desks, trays with legs, and seats. It can also be the “pod” in 一脚 (mono-pod). Outside the home, however, these things frequently counted with ～台 or some other counter.

1	いっきゃく	2	にっきゃく	3	さんきゃく	4	よんきゃく
5	ごきゃく	6	ろっきゃく	7	ななきゃく	8	はっきゃく
9	きゅうきゃく	10	じゅっきゃく じっきゃく	100	ひゃっきゃく	?	なんきゃく

25. オフィスチェアが {4個・4脚} あります。  
There are four office chairs.

26. 折り畳み式 (の) 椅子が {3個・3脚} あります。  
There are three fold-up chairs.

normal

27. 鉄製の机が {2台・2つ・2脚} あります。  
There are two steel desks.

28. 三脚を使ったことがありますか。  
Have you ever used a tripod?

**Word Note:** In the phrase 三脚, the literal meaning of “leg” for the character 脚 is used.

## ～着

Depending on the clothing, you will either count it with ～着 or ～枚. Suits, dresses, coats, and jackets that cover the whole body are counted with ～着. Shirts, blouses, sweaters, skirts, pants, underwear, casual jackets, one-pieces, etc. are counted with ～枚.

1	いっちゃん	2	にちゃん	3	さんちゃん	4	よんちゃん
5	ごちゃん	6	ろくちゃん	7	ななちゃん	8	はっちゃん
9	きゅうちゃん	10	じゅっちゃん じっちゃん	100	ひゃっちゃん	?	なんちゃん

29. 社会人でもスーツを1着しか持ってない人はたくさんいるでしょう。  
There are plenty of people who may be working-adults yet have but one suit.

30. 浴衣は多分3着持ってると思います。  
I think I probably have three yukatas.

31. 皆さんは、仕事用のスーツは何着持ってるんですか。  
How many business suits does everyone have?

## ～膳

The counter ～膳 counts bowlfuls of rice or pairs of chopsticks.

1	いちぜん	2	にぜん	3	さんぜん	4	よんぜん
5	ごぜん	6	ろくぜん	7	ななぜん	8	はちぜん
9	きゅうぜん	10	じゅうぜん	100	ひゃくぜん	?	なんぜん

normal

わたし    さんぜん    はん    たい  
32. 私 は 3 膳のご飯を平らげた。  
I ate up three bowlfuls of rice.

はし    にぜん  
33. 箸を2膳ください。  
Two (pairs of) chopsticks, please.

しゅしょく    いちにちにぜん    はん    たまご    さかな    にく    とうふ    たんぱくしつ    おお    かなら    せっしゅ  
34. 主 食は、1 日2膳のご飯と 卵 や 魚 、お肉や豆腐など蛋白質の多いものを 必 ず摂取  
することが大切です。  
For one's staple food, it is important that you always intake two bowlfuls of rice and foods  
rich in protein such as eggs, fish, meat, tofu, etc. a day.

## ～貫

The counter ～貫<sup>かん</sup> has three usages, two of which are obsolete. The first two involve units of currency and weight that are no longer used today but continue to be used when talking about or speaking as if one were in a period in which these units were in use. Otherwise, it is used to count pieces of sushi. Of course, ～個 is also appropriate. Interestingly enough, nearly half of all speakers treat 1貫 as 2個 rather than 1個. This is because sushi is usually dished out as two pieces. However, this practice itself is called 2貫付け, indicating that traditionally 1貫 refers to 1 piece. Because of this confusion, some speakers will either view each increment as referring to either one or two pieces each.

1	いっかん	2	にかん	3	さんかん	4	よんかん
5	ごかん	6	ろっかん	7	ななかん	8	はっかん はちかん
9	きゅうかん	10	じゅっかん じっかん	100	ひゃっかん	?	なんかん

す    し    なんかん    た  
35. 寿司は何貫ぐらい食べられますか。  
How many pieces of sushi can you eat?

いっかん    なんこ  
36. 1 貫って何個ですか？  
How much is 1 kan (of sushi)?

おお    じゅっかん    た    せんにひゃくえん  
37. 大トロ 10 貫食べても 1200 円！

normal only 1200 yen even if you have 10 pieces of fat under-belly (of tuna)!

---

## ～輪

The counter 輪<sup>りん</sup> either counts flowers (in bloom) or the number of wheels (on a vehicle).  
When counting flowers, some speakers prefer to use 本 whenever a single plant has more than one bud that blooms.

1	いちりん	2	にりん	3	さんりん	4	よんりん
5	ごりん	6	ろくりん	7	ななりん	8	はちりん
9	きゅうりん	10	じゅうりん	100	ひゃくりん	?	なんりん

38. この日午前 11 時<sup>ひ ご ぜん じゅういち じ</sup>ごろ、花<sup>はな</sup>が5輪<sup>ごりん</sup>咲いているのを確認<sup>かくにん</sup>しました。  
Today at around 11 AM, (I/we) verified that five flowers have bloomed.

39. 思い返<sup>おも</sup>せば、小<sup>かえ</sup>さいころに確<sup>ちい</sup>かに三輪<sup>たし</sup>車<sup>さんりんしゃ</sup>に乗<sup>の</sup>ったことないなあ。  
Now that I look back, I don't think I ever rode a tricycle when I was little.

40. 昨年<sup>さくねん</sup>は1輪<sup>いちりん</sup>しか開<sup>かい</sup>花<sup>か</sup>しなかった。  
Not one flower bloomed last year.

---

## ～対

The counter 対<sup>つい</sup> counts two things that make up a set. Be aware that some kinds of sets like footwear or teams are still counted with their unique counters and thus would not otherwise be counted with 対.

1	いっつい	2	にっつい	3	さんつい	4	よんつい
5	ごつい	6	ろくつい	7	ななつい	8	はっつい
9	きゅうつい	10	じゅうつい じっつい	100	ひゃくつい	?	なんつい

41. ウサギは切<sup>せつし</sup>歯<sup>ろっほん</sup>を6本<sup>うえさゆうについ</sup>（上<sup>したさゆうについ</sup>左<sup>も</sup>2対<sup>も</sup>・下<sup>も</sup>左<sup>も</sup>右<sup>も</sup>1対<sup>も</sup>）持<sup>も</sup>っている。  
Rabbits have six incisors (two pairs to the left and right on the top and one pair to the left and right on the bottom).

さいぼう ちちおや ははおやゆらい せんしよくたい ひと いっつい も  
42. 細胞は父親、母親由来の染色体を1つずつ、1対持っている。  
Cells carry one pair of chromosomes, one derived from both one's father and mother.

けんし せんい おお ひ さ は じょうげいっつい よんほん  
43. 犬歯は繊維の多いものを引き裂くための歯で上下1対ずつ4本あります。  
Canines are teeth meant for slicing fibrous foods and there are four of them, a pair both top and both.

のうしんけいじゅうについ のうかんぶ で のうしんけい じゅうつい  
44. 脳神経 12 対のうち脳幹部より出る脳神経は10対あります。  
Of the twelve pairs of cranial nerves, there are ten pairs of cranial nerves that come out from the brain stem.

---

## ～男

なん  
The counter ～男 counts sons and is typically used only up till five. The phrases for “first son” and “second son” are set phrases. However, when used to just count offspring in general, 1 and 2 are expressed as usual.

1	ちょうなん (長男) いちなん	2	じなん (次男)	3	さんなん	4	よんなん	5	ごなん
---	--------------------	---	----------	---	------	---	------	---	-----

むしょく よんじゅうさい だんせい しゅうしんちゅう にじゅうにさい ちょうなん おの さつがい うたが  
45. 無職の 42 歳の男性が、就寝中の 22 歳の長男を斧で殺害しようとした疑いで  
逮捕された。

An unemployed male aged 42 was arrested under the suspicion that he attempted to murder his eldest son, aged 22, with an axe as he slept.

わたし な ぜ じなん あい まいにち かんが かつとう  
46. 私は何故、次男を愛せないのか、毎日そのことを考えて葛藤していました。  
I have thought and been conflicted every day about why it is that I can't love my second son.

ちょうなん じなん いえ つ い さんなん あとつ  
47. 長男、次男とも家を継ぐとかそういうことしたくないと言い、三男が跡継ぎになりました。

The eldest and second son both stated that they didn't want to be the successor of the family or anything of the such, and so the third son became the successor.

---

## ～女

The counter ～<sup>じょ</sup>女 counts daughters and is typically used only up till five. The phrases for “first daughter” and “second daughter” are set phrases. However, when used to just count offspring in general, 1 and 2 are expressed as usual.

1	ちょうじょ (長女) いちじょ	2	じじょ (次女)	3	さんじょ	4	よんじょ	5	ごじょ
---	--------------------	---	----------	---	------	---	------	---	-----

48. 私<sup>わたし</sup>は夫<sup>おっと</sup>から長女<sup>ちょうじょ</sup>の DNA<sup>ディーエヌエイ</sup> 鑑定<sup>かんてい</sup>を求められました。  
I was asked by my husband to have a DNA test done for our eldest daughter.

49. 私<sup>わたし</sup>は長女<sup>ちょうじょ</sup>が5歳<sup>ごさい</sup>のときに次女<sup>じじょ</sup>を産<sup>う</sup>みました。  
I gave birth to my second daughter when my eldest daughter was five years old.

50. 家族<sup>かぞく</sup>は妻<sup>つま</sup>との間<sup>あいだ</sup>に1男<sup>いちなん</sup>3女<sup>さんじょ</sup>がいます。  
The family has one son and three daughters between him and his wife.

## 第194課: Adjectives IV: Stems of Adjectives in Compounds

A very constructive means of using adjectives happens to be using the stems of adjectives in compounds. Instead of saying something like *furui shimbun* 古い新聞 to mean “old newspaper,” you can simply say *furushimbun* 古新聞.

Before you go overboard and drop every /i/ each time you use an adjective, it’s important to note that all examples of this must be treated as set phrases. This is because you can’t assume that dropping /i/ results in a valid phrase and because you cannot be 100% sure that nuance won’t change even if the resultant phrase is valid. For example, both of the following are possible, but they differ significantly in nuance.

*Furudokei* 古時計: Antique clock

*Furui tokei* 古い時計: An old watch/clock

The difference, as you can see, is far from subtle. Here’s another instance of nuance being quite different:

*Furuhon’ya* 古本屋: A used book store

*Furui hon’ya* 古い本屋: An old bookstore

Yet again, you could unintentionally drastically change what you intend to say if you’re not

normalful.

# Vocabulary List

## Nouns

- 新聞 *Shimbun* – Newspaper
- 時計 *Tokei* – Clock/watch
- 本屋 *Hon'ya* – Bookstore
- 古新聞 *Furushimbun* – Old newspaper
- 古時計 *Furudokei* – Antique clock
- 古本屋 *Furuhon'ya* – Used book store
- 考え方 *Kangaekata* – Mindset/way of thinking
- 地区 *Chiku* – Sector/area
- お客さん *Okyaku-san* – Customer
- 噂話 *Uwasabanashi* – Gossip
- 前 *Mae* – In front
- 店員 *Ten'in* – Store employee
- 古着屋 *Furugiya* – Old clothing store
- 売り場 *Uriba* – Sales floor
- 過去 *Kako* – Past
- 古傷 *Furukizu* – Old wounds
- 故郷 *Kokyō/furusato* – Hometown
- 時 *Toki* – Time/when
- 古株 *Furukabu* – Old timer
- 古雑誌 *Furuzasshi* – Old magazine(s)
- 電車 *Densha* – Train

## Adverbs

- 毎月 *Maitsuki* – Every month
- 将来 *Shōrai* – In the future
- とっても *Tottemo* – Very
- 必ずしも *Kanarazu shimo* – Not always
- ここ数日 *Koko sūjitsu* – The past few days
- 限り *Kagiri* – As possible
- うちに *Uchi ni* – While
- ほとんど *Hotondo* – Hardly
- なかなか *Nakanaka* – Considerably/by no means
- いつも *Itsumo* – Always
- 全然 *Zenzen* – Not at all
- 一日に *Ichinichi ni* – In a day
- どのくらい *Dono kurai* – How much
- 実際 *Jissai* – Actually
- あまり *Amari* – Not really
- 快く *Kokoroyoku* – Pleasantly

## Number Phrases

- 一人 *Hitori* – One person

## (ru) Ichidan Verbs

- 掲げる *Kakageru* – To hoist/carry (an article)/tout/adopt (slogan) (trans.)
- 比べる *Kuraberu* – To compare (trans.)
- 売れる *Ureru* – To be sold (intr.)
- 寝る *Neru* – To sleep (intr.)

- 気分 *Kibun* – Feeling/mood
- 嬉し涙 *Ureshinamida* – Tears of joy
- 弱虫 *Yowamushi* – Coward/weakling
- 火 *Hi* – Fire
- 弱火 *Yowabi* – Low flame
- とろ火 *Torobi* – Simmer flame
- こと *Koto* – Thing/incident/situation
- 外交 *Gaikō* – Diplomacy
- 弱音 *Yowane* – Feeble complaint
- 赤字 *Akaji* – Deficit
- 黒字 *Kuroji* – Surplus
- 生活 *Seikatsu* – Life/livelihood
- 倒産 *Tōsan* – Bankruptcy
- 確率 *Kakuritsu* – Probability
- 業種 *Gyōshu* – Industry
- 玄関前 *Genkan-mae* – In front of entryway
- 赤身魚 *Akamizakami* – Red meat fish
- 低温 *Teion* – Low temperature
- 低時間 *Teijikan* – Short amount of time
- 卵 *Tamago* – Egg
- 白身 *Shiromi* – White meat/white of an egg
- 黄身 *Kimi* – Yolk
- スーパー *Sūpā* – Supermarket

normal 店 *Yaoya* – Greengrocer

## **(u) Godan verbs**

- 持つ *Motsu* – To hold/possess (trans.)
- 挟る *Eguru* – To gouge/greatly perturb (trans.)
- 向かう *Mukau* – To head toward (intr.)
- 乗る *Noru* – To ride (intr.)
- 聞く *Kiku* – To hear/listen/ask (trans.)
- なる *Naru* – To be(come) (intr.)
- 止まる *Tomaru* – To stop (intr.)
- 吐く *Haku* – To vomit/breathe out/spit up (trans.)
- 割る *Waru* – To crack/split (trans.)
- 濁る *Nigoru* – To be cloudy/muddy (intr.)
- 出回る *Demawaru* – To appear (in market) (intr.)
- 見つかる *Mitsukaru* – To find incidentally (intr.)
- 取る *Toru* – To take (trans.)

## **suru Verbs**

- 経営する *Keiei suru* – To operate/manage (trans.)
- 分別する *Bumbetsu suru* – To separate (recycling)/division (trans.)
- 回収する *Kaishū suru* – To collect/retrieve (trans.)
- 脱出する *Dasshutsu suru* – To escape (intr.)
- 冷凍する *Reitō suru* – To freeze (in freezer) (trans.)
- 解凍する *Kaitō suru* – To thaw (trans.)
- 高望みする *Takanozomi suru* – To aim too high (intr.)



- ・市場 *Ichiba* – Market
- ・高値 *Takane* – High price
- ・安値 *Yasune* – Low price
- ・本 *Hon* – Book
- ・弁護士 *Bengoshi* – Lawyer
- ・態度 *Taido* – Attitude
- ・婚活 *Konkatsu* – Marriage hunting
- ・シロクマ（白熊） *Shirokuma* – Polar bear
- ・薄着 *Usugi* – Light clothing
- ・厚着 *Atsugi* – Heavy clothing
- ・餌 *Esa* – Food (animal's)
- ・量 *Ryō* – Amount
- ・男性 *Dansei* – Man/male
- ・女性 *Josei* – Woman/female
- ・厚化粧 *Atsugeshō* – Heavy makeup

## Pronouns

- ・俺 *Ore* – I (rough male speech)
- ・自分 *Jibun* – Oneself

## Proper Nouns

- ・日本 *Nihon* – Japan
- ・共産党 *Kyosantō* – Communist Party

## Adjectives

- ・古い *Furui* – Old

normal 古い *Furukusai* – Old-fashioned

## Set Phrases

- ・うまくいく *Umaku iku* – To go well
- ・必要とする *Hitsuyō to suru* – To require
- ・黒字倒産 *Kuroji tōsan* – Insolvency due to liquidity problems
- ・赤旗 *Akahata* – Red Flag

## Adjectival Nouns

- ・田舎 {の} *Inaka [no]* – Rural
- ・他 {の} *Ta/hoka [no]* – Other
- ・嫌 {な} *Iya [na]* – Unpleasant
- ・地球上 {の} *Chikyūjō [no]* – On Earth
- ・最強 {の} *Saikyō* – Strongest
- ・弱腰 {な・の} *Yowagoshi [na/no]* – Weak-kneed
- ・隣人 {の} *Rinjin [no]* – Neighbor
- ・可能 {な} *Kanō [na]* – Possible
- ・高飛車 {な} *Takabisha [na]* – High-handed
- ・野生 {の} *Yasei [no]* – Wild
- ・多く {の} *Ōku* – A lot/many

## Prefixes

- ・最～ *Sai-* – -est

## Suffixes

- ・～達 *-tachi* – Plural marker
- ・～（Adj. stem +） そうだ *-sō da* – To seem
- ・～にくい *-nikui* – Difficult to

## Question Words

- 若い *Wakai* – Young
- どうして *Dōshite* – Why
- 低い *Hikui* – Low
- 何故 *Naze* – Why
- 無い *Nai* – Not being
- 辛い *Tsurai* – Bitter/tough/painful
- 暑い *Atsui* – Hot (weather)

## Adnominal Adjectives

- ある *Aru* – A certain

## Stems in Compounds

### Adjectives Aren't Created Equal

Not all adjectives are created equally in how productive they may be used in compounds. Nonetheless, the number of examples that are commonly used is quite high. For the remainder of this lesson, you will become acquainted with plenty of examples to get a feel of what to look for as you continue to encounter more of them in your studies.

1. 田舎の古臭い考え方を持つ。

*Inaka no furukusai kangaekata wo motsu.*  
To hold a rural, old-fashioned mindset.

2. ある地区では、毎月、古新聞と古雑誌を分別して回収している。

*Aru chiku de wa, maitzuki, furushimbun to furuzasshi wo bumbetsu shite kaishū shite iru.*  
In a certain sector, every month, (the municipality) separates and collects old newspapers and magazines.

3. 将来、古着屋を経営したいと考えています。

*Shōrai, furugiya wo keiei shitai to kangaete imasu.*  
I'm thinking about wanting to run an old clothing store in the future.

4. 売り場の古株そうな店員が他の若い店員達を前に、お客さんの噂話をしていたのを聞いたときもとっても嫌な気分になったんですよ。

*Uriba no furukabu-sō na ten'in ga hoka no wakai ten'intachi wo mae ni, okyaku-san no uwasabanashi wo shite ita no wo kiita toki mo tottemo iya na kibun ni natta n desu yo.*

I was also in a really bad mood when I heard employees who seemed to be old-timers of the sales floor gossiping about customers in front of other young employees.

normal 去の古傷をえぐってしまう。

*Kako no furukizu wo egutte shimau.*  
To accidentally perturb old wounds.

6. 故郷へ向かって電車に乗る。  
*Furusato e mukatte densha ni noru.*  
To ride on a train heading for one's hometown.

**Reading Note:** 故郷 may also be read as “*kokyō*,” but the reading “*furusato*” is a combination of the adjective *furui* 古い (old) and the noun “*sato*” 里 (neighborhood).

7. 嬉し涙が止まらない。  
*Ureshinamida ga tomaranai.*  
My tears of joy won't stop.

8. 地球上最強の俺は、弱虫じゃないぞ！  
*Chikyūjō saikyō no ore wa, yowamushi ja nai zo!*  
I, the strongest man on Earth, am not a coward!

9. 弱火より弱い火のことをとろ火と言います。  
*Yowabi yori yowai hi no koto wo torobi to iimasu.*  
A flame weaker than a “*yowabi* (low flame)” is called a “*torobi*.”

10. 何故日本の外交は弱腰なのか。  
*Naze Nihon no gaikō wa yowagoshi na no ka?*  
Why is Japanese diplomacy weak-kneed?

11. 弱音を吐くのは必ずしもいけないんでしょうか。  
*Yowane wo haku no wa kanarazu shimo ikenai n deshō ka?*  
Is making complaints always a bad thing?

12. 赤字生活から脱出したいんです。  
*Akaji seikatsu kara dasshutsu shitai n desu.*  
I wish to escape my life in the red.

13. 黒字倒産になる確率は他の業種と比べて低いのです。  
*Kuroji tōsan ni naru kakuritsu wa ta no gyōshu to kurabete hikui no desu.*  
The probability of insolvency due to liquidity issues compared to other industries is low.

14. ここ数日、隣人のひとりが、日本共産党の赤旗を自分の玄関前に掲げていました。  
*Koko sūjitsu, rinjin no hitori ga, Nihon Kyōsan-tō no akahata wo jibun no genkan-mae ni kakagete imashita.*  
For the past couple of days, one of my neighbors has had the red flag of the Communist Party of Japan hanging in front of his entryway.

15. 冷凍した赤身魚を解凍する時は、可能な限り、低温で短時間のうちに解凍してくださ

い。

*Reitō shita akamizakana wo kaitō suru toki wa, kanō na kagiri, teion de tanjikan no uchi ni kaitō shite kudasai.*

When thawing frozen fish with red meat, thaw at low temperature in as short amount of time as possible.

16. 卵を割ったとき、白身が濁っていたことはありませんか。

*Tamago wo watta toki, shiromi ga nigotte ita koto wa arimasen ka?*

Has the white ever been cloudy for you when cracking an egg?

17. 黄身なしの卵がスーパーや八百屋などの市場で出回るとはほとんどないでしょう。

*Kimi nashi no tamago ga sūpā ya yaoya nado no ichiba de demawaru koto wa hotondo nai deshō.*

Eggs without yolks probably hardly ever appear in markets like supermarkets or greengrocers.

18. 高値で売れる本はなかなか見つかりにくい。

*Takane de ureru hon wa nakanaka mitsukarinikui.*

It is rather difficult to find books sold at a high price.

19. 株を一日の最安値で買うのは無理です。

*Ichinichi no saiyasune de kau no wa muri desu.*

It's impossible to buy stocks at the lowest price of the day.

20. 弁護士は何故いつも高飛車な態度を取るのでしょうか。

*Bengoshi wa naze itsumo takabisha na taido wo toru n deshō ka?*

Why is it that lawyers always take a high-handed attitude?

21. 全然高望みしてないのに婚活がうまくいなくて辛い。

*Zenzen takanozomi shitenai noni konkatsu ga umaku ikanakute tsurai.*

Even though I'm not aiming too high at all, it's been tough with my marriage hunting not going well.

22. 野生の白熊が一日に必要なとしている餌の量は、どのくらいですか。

*Yasei no shirokuma ga ichinichi ni hitsuyō to shite iru esa no ryō wa, dono kurai desu ka?*

What is the amount of food a wild polar bear requires a day?

23. どうして薄着で寝るの？

*Dōshite usugi de neru no?*

Why do you sleep in light clothing?

24. 暑いのに厚着をする。

*Atsui noni atsugi wo suru.*

To wear thick clothing despite it being hot.

25. 実際、多くの男性は厚化粧の女性をあまり快く思っていないようです。

*Jissai, ōku no dansei wa atsugeshō no josei wo amari kokoroyoku omotte inai yō desu.*

Actually, many men don't think very pleasantly of women with heavy makeup.

## 第191課: Pronouns III: 再帰代名詞

Japanese 再帰代名詞 *equate* to English "reflexive pronouns". However, unlike the reflexive pronouns of English and other European languages, these Japanese words are far more complex. Usages vary and are heavily reliant on context for correct interpretation.

The first problem that you have to come to grips with is the sheer number of "reflexive pronouns" in Japanese: 自分、自分自身、自身、自己、自体、自ら、自ずから、己、and 各々. Though this list may appear exhaustive, it does not include words with reflexive elements in them or dialectical variants.

**漢字 Note:** There are other words with 自- with a meaning of "own". Ex. 自宅 = "One's house".

### 自分(じぶん)

自分 causes linguists on both sides of the Pacific to constantly write on the so-called long-distance reflexive pronouns of Japanese. If you ever look into this matter in greater academic depth, this term will come up. However, even without any linguistic knowledge, with what is to be discussed, this term will inevitably hone things together in your mind.

---

#### Source of Confusion

自分 has **no exact** English equivalent. Most textbooks say it means "(one)self", "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "themselves", "itself", etc. depending on context. This, though, is oversimplified. How do you know which is meant with just **a** sentence? What if there are multiple things 自分 could refer to?

This is where long-distance reflexive properties and knowledge of clause structures and particles come into play. For starters, consider the following sentence:

1a. 自分が馬鹿者だって知らないんだ。

From an English perspective where an anaphor, a "-self" word, must have an antecedent (something before them) to refer to, 自分 having no subject to refer to and being marked by が as the subject is problematic! As, additional information can be easily dropped in a Japanese sentence, long-distance co-referencing comes into play.

自分 can refer to a subject mentioned earlier. In the alteration of the prevision example, it is clear that 自分 = 彼女ら自身 (they themselves).

1b. 彼女らは自分が馬鹿者だって知らないんだ。

---

### **Scenarios with Multiple Potential Readings**

There are some cases where you need the full discourse to conclude the meaning of 自分. Even with context, in sentences such as below, there really are multiple, variable readings that you can derive and not be wrong. In such situations, even for native speakers, explaining may be the only way to negate ambiguity as seen below.

2. 岸田さんは、「小田原さんが『自分は頭がいい』と言った」と言った。

It could be that Odawara was referring to Kishida. Or, he could have been just talking about himself. Regardless of what you think is the most probable interpretation, without any other information, it's not certain.

---

### **Single Interpretation Scenarios**

Consider the following with only one possible interpretation. Regardless whether there is ambiguity in what 自分 refers to or not or how long the sentence is, it still refers to something specific.

3. 畑中先生は憲太にとって自分の親のような存在だった。

Hatanaka Sensei was to Kenta like his own parent.

4. 清美は、実際としては、春彦に何を白状させたというのでなく、ただ自分の推測でものを言っているだけだ。

As for Kiyomi, it's not what did she make Haruhiko confess; it's just her own conjecture.

In Ex. 3, 畑中先生 is still the topic. She has an existence of [憲太にとって自分の親のような]. We know that 自分 doesn't refer to her because にとって provides an explanatory sense to the situation, negating the other possible reference, 憲太. Without 憲太にとって, 自分 would refer to 畑中先生.

In Ex. 4, 自分 refers to 清美. This is because [春彦から何を白状させたという] is embedded in the nominal phrase marked by の, which could be replaced by any other noun phrase you'd like.

## Unlikely Ambiguous Scenarios

In this final example, it would be odd for the command to be for the listener to retrospect on what the *speaker* has done. However, this reading could exist given enough context. However, if this is all that is said, you can safely assume that the only plausible reading is the one given in translation.

5. 君は、自分のことを反省しなさい。  
Look back on what you yourself have done.

One could potentially bring up counterexamples that defy minor details of what has been said thus far, but it is clear that context decides. Even if this context still doesn't solve everything, just like how we deal with ambiguity in English, you either make the most logical assumption of what it means or seek clarification if possible.

---

## More Examples

6. 自分でやりなさい。  
Do it yourself.

7a. 自分自身が自分であるために  
7b. 自分が自分自身であるために (もっと自然)  
In order for one to be oneself

8. 若いうちに自分のしたいことをしておくといい。  
It is good for you to do what you want to do while you're still young.

9a. 多くの人は、自分の体を大切にすべきだと主張している。(もっと自然な言い方)  
9b. 自分の体を大切にすべきだと主張する人は多い。(あまり使われていない言い方)  
A lot of people stress that everyone should take good care of themselves.

10. 彼女は鏡で長いこと自分を見つめていた。  
She was staring at herself in the mirror for a long time.

11. {各人・自分} の責任において  
At one's own risk

**Meaning Note:** It is not proper in honorifics to use 自分 to mean "I", which is extremely common in places like the 関西弁. This colloquial usage appears to have risen from the practice of soldiers having to refer to themselves as such. It can also confusingly still be used to refer to the listener.

12. 自分にやらせてください。

Please let me do it.  
normal

13. この事実にたいして君が自分達を如何ように裁いてくれても自分たちは勿論甘受する。  
To this truth, no matter how you judge us, we will of course put up with it.  
From 友情 by 武者小路実篤.

## 自分自身

自己

自己防衛	Self-defence	自己批判	Self-criticism	自己矛盾	Self-contradiction
自己紹介	Self-introduction	自己犠牲	Self-sacrifice	自己採点	Self-rating
自己評価	Self-evaluation	自己中心	Self-centered	自己主張	Self-assertion

normal



19. 考えそれ自体は、悪くありません。

The idea itself isn't bad.

20. それ自体は毒じゃない。

It itself isn't a poison.

21. 家自体が古い。

The house itself is old.

22. 口答えすること自体そもそも間違いだろう。

Talking back in of itself in the first place was a mistake, no?

## 自ら & 自ずから

As you would imagine, these are native reflexive pronouns. The first is read as みずから. The second is read as おのずから. So, be very careful about that. They're not used in any colloquial sense like 自分. However, the overall problems of interpretation are still very relevant. In an adverbial sense they can be used like 自分で. In this case, though, there is no particle involved. These words have the same nuance effect as 自分自身.

23a. 天は自ら助くるものを助く。(Proverb)

23b. 天は {自ら・自分(自身)を} 助けるものを助ける。(Modern Japanese Equivalent)  
Heaven helps those who help themselves.

24. 彼自ら東京へ行った。

He went to Tokyo himself.

25. その事実は自ずから明らかだ。

The fact speak for themselves.

**Nuance Note:** 自ずから is often seen as 自ずと and both are used in a sense that the situation and hand is naturally so.

## 己 & 各々

己 has always been an important reflexive pronoun in Japanese. Although now it can be used as a second person pronoun slur, you still see it in a lot of old, set phrases. The root is おの-, which can be seen doubled in the expression 各々 (each and every). Although there are a lot of possible set and at times very archaic expressions that use these words, only truly relevant examples will be brought up.

normal 己を知れ。

Know thyself.

27. 己の説くところを励行せよ。

Practice what you preach.

28. 己が誰なのか知れ。

Know who you are.

29a. 己をもって他人を律するな。

29a. 自分の基準で他人を律するな。(もっと自然)

Don't just others by yourself.

30. 容疑者がおのおの違った説明をした。

The suspects each gave a different story.

31. どこの学校でも新入生がそうであるように、私は毎日新鮮な気持ちで通いながらも、とりとめのない思いがしていた。知り人は鶴川であった。どうしても鶴川とばかり話そうになる。それでは折角新らしい世界へ出て来た意味がないのを、鶴川のほうでも感じているらしく、数日たつうちに、休み時間にはわざと二人が離れて、**おのがじし**新らしい友を開拓しようとした。しかし吃りの私には、そういう勇気もなかったので、鶴川の友が増えるにつれ、私はますます孤りになった。

Like a new student in any school, while I went with fresh feelings each day, there was something I couldn't bring myself to. Tsurukawa was my acquaintance. I was to no matter what only talk with Tsurukawa. With even Tsurukawa sensing that there was no meaning to coming into this long awaited new world, in a matter of days, we purposely separated during break to each find friends. But, with my stutter, as Tsurukawa's friends grew in number, I became ever more alone.

From 金閣寺 by 三島由紀夫.

**Word Note:** おのがじし is an archaism meaning それぞれに.

**Spelling Note:** In Ex. 31, there are some interesting spellings. 独り is written instead as 孤り. Also, 新しい is written as 新らしい. This is because 送り仮名 usage was not standardized at the time. Lastly, although its not exceptional, 吃り is read as どもり.

## 第176課: やはり & さすが

These two adverbial expressions are referred to as phrases that don't have good English equivalents. Although this is true, the main thing that is brushed aside is how to differentiate between them. Though they are different enough to the point that that shouldn't really be an issue, it's best to make sure that you know when to use them.

## やはり

やはり, also やっぱり, やっぱし, and やっぱ in slang, means "just as one thought", "as of/still yet/now". It may also suggest a feeling of returning back to one's original idea or motives.

1. やっぱ（り）、これでは変だよ。

This here is weird as I thought.

2. やはり想像した通りの家です。

This is the house just as I had imagined.

3. やっぱり殺されちゃった。

I knew that he was killed.

4. やっぱしだめ。

It's bad in the end.

5. やっぱり来たのね。

Here you come again.

6. 「夏休みはどうしたんですか」「日本語を勉強しました」「じゃあ、たくさん勉強できたでしょう」

「ええ、でも、夏はやっぱり暇な時間がたくさんあると思いました」

「そうですね。ところで、きのうはどんなレストランへ行ったんですか」


「メキシコ風料理屋へ行きました」「おいしかったですか」

「ええ、でも、私は韓国人だから、やっぱり味が韓国料理店のとすごく違うと思いました」

"How was your summer break?". "I studied Japanese". "Well, so you got to do a lot of studying, right?". "Yes, but, I thought that there was a lot of free time". "True, by the way, what kind of restaurant did you go to yesterday?". "I went to a Mexican food restaurant". "Was it good?". "Yes, but since I'm Korean, I thought that the flavor was quite different from a Korean restaurant".

## さすが

さすが is just one of those words that gives a lot of trouble because it doesn't have an English equivalent. **さすが** shows something ***good is as expected***. It can also be used with the negative to show that although one thought one's expectations would come through, things don't pan out so. This pattern is often used with 〜だけあって.

 すがだな。

Just as expected.

8. 時は金なりとはさすがによく言えている。

It is indeed said that time is money.

**Grammar Note:** とは quotes a set phrase. In this set phrase, なり is simply a classical copular verb.

9. さすがは彼女だ。

It's just like her to.

10. 田中さんは、プロだけあって、さすがにホームランが打てますよ。

Since Tanaka is a pro, he can hit home runs as expected.

11. 有名なレストランだけあって、さすがに予約をしても、いつも客が長い列を作っていて、席に案内されるのに長時間がかかるのです。

Given that it's a famous restaurant, even when you get a reservation, there is always a line of customers, and it takes a long time to get seated.

12. 彼は**さすが**は大統領です。

He is worthy to be the president.

13. **さすが**の僕もそこまでは言えませんよ。

Even I can't say to that extent.

**Variant Note:** さすがの = さしもの. However, the latter is rare and is seen in literature.

**Orthography Note:** さすが can be seldom seen written in 漢字 as 流石.

## 第195課: Counters IX: Counters with ケ・カ

个 is the most commonly used measure word in Mandarin Chinese. This character is a simplified version of 箇, derived by taking one half of the 竹 radical. In Japanese, 个 is further reduced to ケ, which is then normally shrunk to け. Appearance-wise, this glyph looks like a small Katakana ケ. However, the Katakana ケ actually derives from 介. The glyph け is also treated as a variant of 個.

When used in counter phrases, ケ is pronounced as “ka.” In government documents and news broadcasts, it is alternatively written as か. In other forms of publications such as the news or official documents at the workplace, it may also alternatively be written as カ or even カ.

The purpose of ケ is to count things, but it can't do this on its own. It is found as part of a handful of counters, all of which are frequently used. These counters will be the focus of this lesson.

- ケ月 (間) /カ月 (間) /か月 (間) /ヵ月(間)
- ケ年/カ年/か年/ヵ年
- ケ条/カ条/か条/ヵ条
- ケ所/カ所/か所/ヵ所
- ケ国/カ国/か国/ヵ国
- ケ国語/カ国語/か国語/ヵ国語
- 言語

As you can see, we have already familiarized ourselves with the first two counters in Lesson 49.

Lastly, after we have learned about these counters, we will conclude the lesson by learning about an exclusive purpose ケ, alternatively written as a full-sized ケ, has in place names.

---

### Spelling Notes:

1. The following outlets use か月: 読売新聞, NHK, 日本テレビ, and テレビ東京.
2. The following outlets use カ月: 朝日新聞, 毎日新聞, 日本経済新聞, 産経新聞, テレビ朝日, and フジテレビ.
3. The non-simplified spelling 箇 may also be seen in the spellings of the counters introduced in this lesson.

### Reading Notes:

1. Because ケ is also treated as an abbreviated form of 個, it can also stand for the counter 個. This, though, is only done based on personal preference.
2. At times in literature, カタカナ is sometimes used in 送り仮名. When this is the case, ケ may be shrunk to ケ with no change in meaning or pronunciation. Meaning, it would be read as “ke” and would need to be distinguished from the ケ discussed in this lesson. This use of a literal small ケ can also be seen used in dialectical spelling.

## Counters with ケ・カ・か・カ

ケ月 (間) /カ月 (間) /か月 (間) /ヵ月(間)

This counter is used to count a period of months.

1 normal	いっかげつ (かん)	2	にかげつ (かん)	3	さんかげつ (かん)
-------------	------------	---	-----------	---	------------

4	よんかげつ (かん)	5	ごかげつ (かん)	6	ろっかげつ (かん)
7	ななかげつ (かん)	8	はちかげつ (かん) はっかげつ (かん)	9	きゅうかげつ (かん)
10	じゅっかげつ (かん) じっかげつ (かん)	100	ひゃっかげつ (かん)	?	なんかげつ (かん)

1. 8 か月で約5倍になった計算だ。  
This calculation shows it's become approximately five times greater in eight months.

2. 異常気象が数カ月でグリーンアノールを急速に進化させた。  
Extreme weather has made the green anole to rapidly evolve in a few months.

3. レギュラーガソリン、3 か月ぶりに値下がり  
First Price Decline for Regular Gasoline in Three Months

4. 「法定 12 ヶ月点検」って必ず受けなければいけないのでしょうか。  
Must you always take the "Statutory 12-Month Inspection"?

5. 今回はこの5ヶ月のダイエット生活を振り返ってみたいと思います。  
This time, I would like to look back at my dieting life for these past five months.

### ヶ年/カ年/か年/カ年

This counter translates as "over...years" and is frequently employed in legislation and business settings.

1	いっかねん △	2	にかねん	3	さんかねん	4	よんかねん
5	ごかねん	6	ろっかねん	7	ななかねん	8	はちかねん はっかねん
9	きゅうかねん	10	じゅっかねん じっかねん	100	ひゃっかねん	?	なんかねん

6. この3 か年実施計画書に基づいて予算を編成します。  
(We) will compile the budget based on this three-year implementation plan.

normal 路整備の5 か年計画が決定された。

The five-year road maintenance plan was decided upon.

8. 国の直轄工事では、2カ年国債の活用によって新規工事契約件数が増えた。

In government-controlled construction, the number of new construction contracts increased due to the application of two-year government bonds.

9. この6カ年計画の非現実性について説明します。

I will explain the impracticality of this six-year plan.

10. 政府は、がん研究10か年戦略を策定した。

The government settled on the ten-year strategy for cancer research.

### ヶ条/カ条/か条/カ条

This counter counts the number of articles/clauses/sections in an official document. It may also be used to mean “points” as in “10 points to a happy marriage.” The noun for article/clause is 箇条, which is written with 箇 instead of with any of the abbreviated variants of the character.

1	いっかじょう	2	にかじょう	3	さんかじょう
4	よんかじょう	5	ごかじょう	6	ろっかじょう
7	ななかじょう	8	はちかじょう はっかじょう	9	きゅうかじょう
10	じゅっかじょう じっかじょう	100	ひゃっかじょう	?	なんかじょう

11. 幸せになる100か条

The 100 Points to Becoming Happy

12. がんを防ぐための12か条

12 Point Guide to Preventing Cancer

13. 情報セキュリティ5か条

Five-Point Information Security

14. 放火防止5か条を実践しましょう。

Let's practice the five points to preventing arson.

normal

ぼうりょくだんたいおうじゅうに じょう  
15. 暴力団対応12か条  
Twelve Points to Handling Gangs

ほう ごじゅうなな か じょう  
16. マイナンバー法は57ヶ条あります。  
The My Number Law has 57 clauses.

けんぽう ぜんぶ ひゃくろくじゅうきゅう か じょう  
17. 憲法は全部で169ヶ条あります。  
The constitution has 169 clauses in total.

けんり じゅう さだ じょうぶん じゅういっ か じょう  
18. 権利や自由を定めた条文は11ヶ条あります。  
The text has 11 clauses that establish rights and freedoms.

げんこうけんぽう ぜんぶ ひゃくさん か じょう ほそく よん か じょう  
19. 現行憲法は全部で103ヶ条あって、そのうち補足が4ヶ条あります。  
The current constitution has 103 clauses in total, and of those there are four complementary notes.

### ヶ所/カ所/か所/カ所

This counter is used to count places/locations. As a noun, 箇所 means “passage/part.”

1	いっかしょ	2	にかしょ	3	さんかしょ
4	よんかしょ	5	ごかしょ	6	ろっかしょ
7	ななかしょ	8	はちかしょ はっかしょ	9	きゅうかしょ
10	じゅっかしょ じっかしょ	100	ひゃっかしょ	?	なんかしょ

さんねんまえ はちがつ は つ か ひろしましな い ひゃくろくじゅうろっ しょ どせきりゅう がけくず はっせい ななじゅうな  
20. 3年前の8月20日に広島市内の166カ所で土石流や崖崩れが発生し、77  
にん しぼう  
人が死亡しました。

77 people died in the debris flows and the landslides that occurred in 166 places within  
Hiroshima City three years ago on August 20<sup>th</sup>.

に さん か しょあやま  
21. 2、3ヶ所誤りがあります。  

normal



There are two or three areas with mistakes.

みなお ひなんじょ いっ しょ  
22. 見直された避難所は1か所ありません。

There is not a single shelter that has been re-examined.

さん しょうじょう いりようきかん つういん こうれいしゃ きゅうわり まんせいしっかん くすり ご  
23. 3か所以上の医療機関に通院している高齢者の9割が、慢性疾患の薬を5  
しゅるいいじょうしよほう  
種類以上処方されている。

Nine-tenths of elderly patients being regularly treated at over three medial institutions are being prescribed over five kinds of chronic illness medication.

じゅっ しょれんぞく まわ  
24. ポケストップを10か所連続で回りました。

I visited ten Pokestops in a row.

### ヶ国/力国/か国/カ国

This counter is used to count countries/nations.

1	いっかこく	2	にかこく	3	さんかこく
4	よんかこく	5	ごかこく	6	ろっかこく
7	ななかこく	8	はちかこく はっかこく	9	きゅうかこく
10	じゅっかこく じっかこく	100	ひゃっかこく	?	なんかこく

げんざい オーイーシーディー かめいこく さんじゅうご こく  
25. 現在、OECDの加盟国は35か国となっています。  
Currently, there are thirty-five member states in the OECD.

せかい くに かず なん か こく  
26. 世界の国の数は何カ国？

What is the number of countries in the world?

かん にっぽんせいふ こっかしょうにん やくひやくさんじゅっ こく  
27. パレスチナに関しては、日本政府は国家承認していないが、すでに約130か国がパ  
しょうにん  
レスティナを承認している。

Regarding Palestine, although the Japanese government does not recognize it as a state,  
normal are already approximately 130 nations that have recognized Palestine.

28. アジア 3 カ国に 跨る洪水で約 300 人が死亡した。  
Approximately 300 people have died in the flooding that has spanned three Asian countries.

29. 世界 10 カ国以上で愛用されている。  
It is habitually used in over ten countries in the world.

In set phrases, especially those related to history and international politics, nations may be counted with 国.

30. オーストラリアとカナダは二国間関係を結んでいる。  
Australia and Canada have bilateral relations.

31. アメリカとの二国間自由貿易協定は実現するのか。  
Will a bilateral free trade agreement realize with America?

32. バルト三国は、バルト海の東岸、フィンランドの南に南北に並ぶ3つの国を指す。  
The Baltic States refers to the three countries lined up north to south to the south of Finland on the east coast of the Baltic Sea.

**Grammar Note:** Notice how “the three countries” is expressed with 3つの国. This is another means of counting countries that is occasionally used.

### ヶ国語/力国語/か国語/カ国語

This counter is used to count languages. However, as is implied by the spelling, this usually only refers to languages that are national languages. Because of this, counting languages with 言語, the word for “language,” is deemed most appropriate whenever national status is not a concern with the languages one is counting.

・かこくご

1	いっかこくご	2	にかこくご	3	さんかこくご
4	よんかこくご	5	ごかこくご	6	ろっかこくご
7	ななかこくご	8	はちかこくご はっこくご	9	きゅうかこくご
10	じゅっかこくご じっかこくご	100	ひゃっかこくご	?	なんかこくご

・げんご

normal

1	いちげんご	2	にげんご	3	さんげんご
4	よんげんご	5	ごげんご	6	ろくげんご
7	ななげんご	8	はちげんご	9	きゅうげんご
10	じゅうげんご	100	ひゃくげんご	?	なんげんご

33. ニヶ国語を話す人のことをバイリンガルと呼びますが、三ヶ国語の話者をトライリンガルもしくはトリリンガルと呼びます。

We call people who speak two languages bilingual, but we call speakers of three languages trilingual.

34. 2言語併記の標識や看板などが設置されている。  
Bilingual signs and billboards are installed.

35. ヘルシンキ市内には 30 か国語を教える学校もある。  
There is also a school in Helsinki that teaches thirty languages.

36. この地域では 15 言語が使用されている。  
There are fifteen languages used in this region.

37. 英語・フランス語・オランダ語の 3 か国語を教える学校となりました。  
The school has become a school that teaches the three languages English, French, and Dutch.

38. 日本政府からの情報番組（5 か国語放送）をご紹介します。  
Here is an introduction to an information program (five-language broadcast) from the Japanese government.

39. 彼はプログラミング言語も含めて、10 言語話せるらしい。  
He apparently knows ten languages, including also programming languages.

40. SOV 型が一番多く 565 言語、次いで SVO 型が 488 言語である。  
The SOV pattern is the one with the most languages with 565, following it is the SVO pattern with 488.

## Place Names: ケ・ケ

When ケ, alternatively spelled as ケ, is used in places names, especially those found in East normaln, it stands in place of a classical usage of the particle が, which is to mark the

possessive case. In this sense, it is equivalent to the particle の. Not all place names with this が are written with these glyphs, though. Sometimes it's just written as が・ガ.

Sekigahara	関ヶ原	Hatogaya	鳩ヶ谷	Tsutsujigaoka	つつじヶ丘
Chigasaki	茅ヶ崎	Shichigahama	七ヶ浜	Aogashima	青ヶ島
Yatsugatake	八ヶ岳	Kamagaya	鎌ヶ谷	Kasumigaseki	霞が関

## 第196課: Idioms III: The Body

This lesson will introduce you to a lot of important idioms that involve parts of the body.

### Examples

1. マンガで目の保養になりました。

Literal: Seeing the manga book became a recreation of the eyes.  
Seeing the manga book was a feast for my eyes.

2. 待つほかに手はなかった。

Literal: There wasn't a hand but to wait.  
There was nothing that I could do but wait for him.

3. 汚い手を使う。

Literal: To use a dirty hand.  
To hit below the belt.

4. もし手に余るようなことがあれば

Literal: If there is something that is too much for your hands.  
If there is something that is beyond your control

5. 先生のお言葉が今でも耳に残っています。

Literal: What my teacher said is still even now remaining in my ear.  
What my teacher said is still even now lingering in my ear.

6. 彼は大統領の右腕として知られています。

Literal: He is known as the president's right arm.  
He is known as the president's right hand man.

7. そのアイスティーは僕の口に合わなかった。

Literal: The ice tea doesn't go well with my mouth.

normal he ice tea doesn't fit my tastes.

8. 借金で首が回らない。  
Literal: One's neck can't turn with debt.  
To be eaten up with debt.
9. 彼は首を振った。  
Literal: He nodded his neck.  
He nodded his head.
10. このケーキはおいしくて顎が落ちそうです。  
This cake is so delicious that my jaws are dropping.
11. 顎を出してしまった。  
Literal: I showed my chin.  
I got exhausted.
- 12a. 首をやる。  
12b. 首を切る。 (To cut the neck).  
Literal: To kill the neck  
To be hanged.
13. 職務怠慢で首にした。  
Literal: To be necked due to neglect of duty.  
To be fired due to neglect of duty.
14. 今は手が塞がっている。  
Literal: My hands are occupied now.  
My hands are full now.
15. いつまでも親の脛を齧るつもりだそうだ。  
Literal: It sounds like she plans to gnaw at her parents' shin forever.  
It sounds like she intends to sponge off her parents forever.
16. 日本語の腕を磨くために日本に引っ越しました。  
Literal: I moved to Japan in order to polish my Japanese arm.  
I moved to Japan in order to polish my Japanese skills.
17. 頭が重くなった。  
Literal: My head got heavy.  
I got a headache.
18. お小僧は大人になって頭を丸めた。  
Literal: The boy became an adult and rounded his head.  
The boy became an adult and then became a Buddhist priest.

19. あなたにはとても頭が上がりません。  
Literal: I do not really raise my head to you.  
I have a great esteem for you.
20. その問題に頭を抱えている。  
Literal: I'm carrying my head in the problem.  
I'm racking my mind over the problem.
21. 解決のため頭を搾る。  
Literal: To squeeze one's head for a solution.  
To think hard on something in order to reach a solution.
22. 頭を冷やせよ。  
Literal: Cool your head.  
Cool it.
23. 名案がぱっと頭に浮かんだ。  
Literal: A good idea suddenly floated into my mind.  
A good idea flashed before my mind.
24. 疑念が頭を擡げてきた。  
Literal: Suspicion raised a head.  
Suspicion reared its head.
25. 頭にきた。  
Literal: It came in (my) mind.  
That makes me angry!
26. 彼は、何をやっても足が地につかない。  
Literally: No matter what he does, his feet won't stick to the ground.  
No matter what he does, he can't stick to anything.
27. 彼は頭が鈍くて理解が遅い。  
Literal: His mind is dull and he's comprehension is slow.  
He's dull-minded and slow at comprehending.
28. 足が重い。  
Literal: Feet are heavy.  
To have lead feet.
29. 彼女は気が多すぎるね。  
Literal: Her spirit is too much.  
She's too fickle.

30. とにかく頭を下げてこい。

Literal: Anyways come over and lower your head.  
Just go and apologize.

31. 将棋の腕が上がったな。

Literal: Your shogi arm has risen, hasn't it?  
Your skills in shogi have improved, haven't they?

Below is a handful of some of the most common idioms of the body. Hundreds more exist, but this can keep you busy. The more you learn, the more you see how these phrases are constructed and about the true meanings of the words in Japanese.

頭が荒い	To breath hard	頭が固まる	To have a fixed idea
頭が切れる	To be quick thinking	頭を抱える	To rack over
顔が厚い	To be impudent	顔が売れる	To be popular
顔が利く	To be influential	顔を貸す	To meet...wishes
顔を潰す	To blight someone's dignity	鼻であしらう	To snub someone
鼻が凹む	To be put down	鼻で笑う	To snicker
耳が肥える	To have an ear of	耳に立つ	To strike one's ear
口が上がる	To become eloquent	口が開く	To make a beginning
唇を奪う	To steal a kiss	歯が浮く	To be nauseating
歯が立つ	To be edible; in one's reach	舌が伸びる	To exaggerate
舌を返す	To change one's tune	目が散る	To be diverted
目が出る	The die is cast	目が届く	To keep an eye on
額に汗する	To do with all one's might	額を集める	To confer together
首が危ない	To be in grave danger	肩が怒る	To get worked up
腕を鳴らす	To gain recognition	腕を引く	To make a solemn vow
指を折る	To make a vow	爪を研ぐ	To prepare for a fight
手が切れる	To fall out with	手が冴える	To be skilled
手が焼ける	To be troublesome	手が笑う	To lose control of hands

胸が決まる	To decide to	胸が焦げる	To be impatient; pine for
胸が裂ける	To be heart-broken	胸が据わる	To be resolute
臍で笑う	To be preposterous	腹がある	To have an agenda
腹がいる	To vent anger	胆が抜ける	To be scared stiff
胆が冷える	To be scared to death	心が動く	To be interested
心が変わる	To be unfaithful	心が腐る	To be corrupted
腰が落ち着く	To take root	腰を上げる	To take action
足を洗う	To make a new start	足を払う	To trip up
踵を巡らす	To retrace steps	血が通う	To be kindhearted
脈が上がる	To pass away; lose hope	脈を見る	To test viability
骨がある	To have fortitude	肌で感じる	To have first-hand experience
筋を言う	To split hairs	筋を書く	To have in mind
体が空く	To be vacant	体が続く	To be in good health

## 第197課: The Grammaticality of Adjective + です

Although using です after adjectives is used by almost all speakers, you would be surprised to know that some speakers feel that it is ungrammatical. In this lesson, we learn as to why that is.

### 形容詞+です、って正しい日本語なの？

First, let's think back to what です is. It is most likely a contraction of でございます.

Intermediate forms such as ござんす and でげす could be found in the speech of adults in the late 1800s and early 1900s in Tokyo. Historically, copula verbs in Japanese could only follow nominal phrases. Nominalized phrases count, and so in the past, using the 連体形 of verbs and adjectives allowed for a copula to follow. For instance, you could get phrase like 思ふなり (do not get confused by the words and spelling being different). This grammar is almost identical in meaning to 〇〇のだ and its variants.

#### 1. 得るは、捨つるにあり。 Set phrase

When you receive something, you have to consequently throw something else away.

normal



**Grammar Note:** 捨つる is the old 連体形 of 捨てる.

In the history of Japanese, there wasn't ever an instance in which copulas could attach directly to an adjective without some form of nominalization. Something such as 新しいです would not be grammatical because there is no precedent for it to be. To make it grammatical with grammar from the past, it would need to be in its 連体形; however, this is now identical to its 終止形. Going back in time to use its original 連体形 would produce 新しいきです, but this has never existed, making this potential fix anachronistic.

The violation of Japanese grammar is apparent. Before the invent of "adjective + です," the pattern "adjective + のです" was used and quite popular in the early 1900s, and it is still used to this day following modern rules on the usage of のです. Due to the strong tone that のです can give, dropping the の to lessen the tone and as a result be more polite is likely the reasoning that brought about "adjective + です."

Another option, however, to fix the inherent grammar issue with "adjective + です," is using 連用形+ある. With it, we get forms as follows:

- 2a. 新しくあります
- 2b. 新しくはあります
- 2c. 新しくありません
- 2d. 新しくはありません
- 2e. 新しくもありません
- 2f. 新しく（は・も）ありませんでした。
- 2g. 新しゅうございます

The first option is stretching things as far as natural speech is concerned. Adding an intervening particle, though, does make it viable in speech. In the negative form, it is not really awkward, and using an intervening particle makes the option all the more viable and common. The last option is an old respectful form. We see this construction in older speech and in set phrases like ありがとうございます. However, because it has for the most part died out within the last 70 years or so, it is unfair and unwise to claim that this should be the one and only right answer to the grammar debate.

Another option to avoid "adjective + です" is paraphrasing. The above situation is a form of paraphrasing, but consider the following with another adjective 暑い.

- 3a. 暑いです。 ○・△・X      3b. 暑い一日でした。 ○
- 3c. 暑くなってきましたね。 ○
- 3d. 暑く感じます。 ○

**Now**, let's broaden our discussion to all potentially grammatically unsound combinations of  
normal

adjective or adjective-like phrases with です.

We have in addition to 新しいです, 新しかったです. We also see ～ないです, ～たいです, and even だったです. Some think that using the past tense of adjectives with です is grammatically the same as with non-past tense. If the speaker likes one, the speaker likes both and vice versa. As is the case with ～ないです, though, using です after an auxiliary gives off the sense of a last-minute addition to make one's phrase polite. Thus, it clearly marks the phrase as a polite phrase found in casual speech that should not be mimicked in more formal situations such as being a program announcer on television.

～たいです does not normally get pointed out as being ungrammatical, but it too disappears in formalized speech. だったです is, unlike every other example, deemed to be wrong by a majority of speakers. This is because でした exists. Yet, you would be surprised how many people still use it. To be fair, it is grammatically correct to upwards of 30% of speakers.

People young and old use the pattern "adjective + です." In reality, register restrictions for when you use it are more important. In strict formal writing, it is almost non-existent. After all, such style of writing tends to be grammatically conservative. However, in the spoken language and writing styles such as those found in blogs, it is extremely common.

The people who are more likely to think that this pattern is incorrect are those who are said to be more sensitive to proper language use, people reading and writing primarily in formal registers. These people are frequently eloquent in their manner of speaking. However, it is important to note that the dialogue sections of even early Modern-Japanese works which laid the foundation for Modern Japanese literature provide us many examples of "adjective + です." Some examples even go beyond what is typically accepted to be correct today.

4. けれど自覚と云うのは、自省<sup>むやみ</sup>ということをも含んでおるですからな、無闇に意志や自我<sup>ふりまわ</sup>を振廻しては困るですよ。自分の遣ったことには自分が全責任を帯びる覚悟がなくては  
But self-awareness also involves self-reflection, so you mustn't simply go recklessly abusing your willpower and ego. You must possess the resignation that you have to bear full responsibility for your own actions.

From 蒲団 by 田山花袋

5. ええ寝ていて空を見る方がいいですと答えて

I answered that it was best to rest well and look at the sky

From 坊ちゃん by 夏目漱石

At the end of the day, it is best to ignore these people because they are not willing to realize that the language has already changed for quite some time to allow it in (casual) polite speech tilted towards the spoken language.

## 第198課: Adjectives: Sound Changes

Although the contraction rules described in this lesson are discussed under the guise of slang speech, they are in fact more so representative of a widespread phonological phenomenon in many dialects in Japan. This is, Japanese tends to not like different vowels right next to each other.

In many dialects (mostly northern and eastern) including casual Tokyo-ben 東京弁, /ai/, /oi/, and /ii/ at the end of adjectives contract to [ē] in slang. Less commonly, those that end in /ui/ may be found contracted to [ē] or [ii]. This phenomenon has existed in some capacity in Japanese for quite some time. In fact, outside of adjectives, you'll find plenty of words contracted with the same premise. For instance, the course words for “you”—*omae* お前 and *temae* 手前—are very frequently pronounced as *omē* おめー and *temē* てめー instead. Again, this is by no mistake.

### How Sound Changes Affect Adjectives

Returning to how this applies to adjectives, in Standard Japanese there is no instance of the syllables /ye/ and /we/, at least in native vocabulary, which means if the sound change /ai/, /oi/, /ii/ → [ē] causes either of those two syllables to form, /y/ and /w/ just drop altogether. An example of this is the adjectives *tsuyoi* 強い (strong). Its contracted form is *tsuē*, not *tsuyē*. In the examples below, you will find examples of these contracted adjectives in their glory. Unsurprisingly, this will be a wonderful opportunity to familiarize with some of the most iconic dialectal phrases in Japanese.

1. あの服、ほんまにええねん。（＝あの服、本当にいいんだよ）

*Ano fuku, homma ni ē nen.*

Those clothes are really good.

2. ええやないか！（＝いいじゃないか）

*Ē ya nai ka!*

Isn't it great?

3. ええんちゃうか？（＝いいんじゃないだろうか？）

*Ē n chau ka?*

Is it not great?

**Grammar Note:** ちゃう is a contraction of 違う and is used in many Western dialects to ask if something is in fact not the case while still seeking a positive affirmation.

4. あのサメ、怖えええ！（＝あのサメ、怖い！）

normal

*Ano same, koē...!*

That shark is scary!

5. すげーだろ！ （＝すごいだろう！）

*Sugē daro!*

Isn't that cool!

6. めっちゃ眠てー！ （＝とっても眠たい！）

*Metcha nemutē!*

I'm really sleepy!

7. 冷蔵庫も何にもねえ！ （＝冷蔵庫も何もない！）

*Reizōko mo nan'ni mo nē!*

There's nothing in the fridge!

8. うっせーな、てめー。 （＝うるさい、お前）

*Ussē na, temē.*

Shut up, you.

**Word Note:** As this example shows, some words can be further contracted—*urusai* → *ussē*.

This sound change also affects grammatical endings such as *-nai* ない and *-tai* たい

9. 弱え奴は着る服も選べねえ！ （＝弱い奴は着る服も選べない！）

*Yoē yatsu wa kiru fuku mo erabenē!*

Weak guys can't even choose their own clothes to wear!

10. たくさん食べてーなあ。 （＝たくさん食べたいなあ）

*Takusan tabetē nā.*

Man, I wanna eat a lot.

11. くだらねーことでいちいち突っかかってくんじゃねーよ。 （＝下らないことでいちいち突っかかっていくんじゃないよ）

*Kudaranē koto de ichi'ichi tsukkakatteku n ja nē yo.*

You can't be charging at me with every little stupid thing.

12. つまんねーこと聞くなよ。 （＝つまらないことを聞くなよ）

*Tsuman'nē koto kiku na yo.*

Don't ask absurd things.

### Idiosyncrasies

One must understand that the productivity of this sound change is not applied to all adjectives. There are plenty of idiosyncrasies and specialized variations depending on the adjective.

小さい <i>Chiisai</i>	ちっちゃい・ちっ ちえー <i>Chitchai/chitchē</i>	寒い <i>Samui</i>	さみい・さめー <i>Samii/samē</i>
悪い <i>Warui</i>	わりい <i>Warii</i>	暑い・熱い <i>Atsui</i>	あちい・あ ちえー <i>Achii/achē</i>
安い <i>Yasui</i>	やせえ <i>Yasē</i>	まずい <i>Mazui</i>	ま(っ)ぜー <i>Ma(z)zē</i>

Another dialectical phenomenon that has an even wider distribution in Japan is dropping the final –i of adjectives and replacing it with a glottal stop, which is optionally spelled with っ. This is frequently employed when talking to oneself or when the adjective in question is not necessarily directed toward anyone. In other words, it has an expletive nature to it.

13. やばっ、逃げろ！

*Yaba...nigero!*

Crap...run!

14. 痛っ！

*Ita...!*

Ouch...!

15. このお湯、熱っ！

*Kono oyu, atsu...!*

This (bath) water's hot!

16. くそ寒っ！

*Kuso samu...!*

It's freaking cold...!

17. うわっ、臭っ！

*Uwa..., kusa...!*

Dang...it smells...!

---

### Vowel Elongation in Stem

Another phenomenon that's not so much dialectical as it is emphatic, rather than stopping with a glottal stop, emphasis can be added to an adjective in casual speech by dropping the final /i/ and elongating the preceding vowel. In fact, the final /i/ doesn't have to be dropped for this to work.

18. 外、寒ー。

*Soto, samū.*

Outside's co-o-old!

19. すごーい!

*Sugōi!*

Cool!

20. 胃が痛ーい!

*I ga itai!*

My stomach hurts!

## 第199課: Adjectives: Other Forms

There is still a bit more that you need to know about adjectival expressions in Japanese. There are older conjugations that you need to get used to as well as two other classes of adjectives with syntactic restrictions to them that the other two classes don't.

### 形容詞: The Original 連体形

Using the original 連体形 for 形容詞 is very limited in Modern Japanese. As you would imagine, fossilized use in set phrases will be the most likely place you find this. It's also the case that literary titles from the West often have older style Japanese. Unless in set phrases, it is most likely the case that the places you find this is in literature. And, there is a good chance that the context may very well be in Classical Japanese.

	連体形
形容詞 ending in い	き
形容詞 ending in しい・じい	しき・じき

### Examples

1. 熱き海 (Literary; classical)

The warm seas

normal

## 2. 熱い海

Hot seas

**Translation Note:** Of course, "hot" is a better translation of any form of 熱い. However, to fit the style of 熱き海, warm is used instead. This phrase especially makes sense in contexts like in the following.

## 3. 70度以上の熱い海に生息する。

To live in hot seas over 70°C.

## 4. この素晴らしき世界

What a wonderful world

## 5. 我が良き友よ

My good friend!

## 6. 悪しき者は火と硫黄の池に投げ込まれた。

The evil ones were thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur.

7. それであなたがた理解ある人々よ、わたしに聞け、神は断じて悪を行うことなく、全能者は断じて不義を行うことはない。神は人のわざに従ってその身に報い、各々の道に従って、その身に振りかからせられる。誠に神は悪しき事を行われない。全能者は裁きをまげられない。だれか全世界を彼に負わせた者があるか。神がもしその霊をご自分に取り戻し、その息をご自分に取り集められるならば、全ての肉は共に滅び、人は塵に帰るであろう。

Therefore, hear me, you men of understanding: far be it from God that he should do wickedness, and from the Almighty that he should do wrong. For according to the work of a man he will repay him, and according to his ways he will make it befall him. Of a truth, God will not do wickedly, and the Almighty will not pervert justice. Who gave him charge over the earth, and who laid on him the whole world? If he should set his heart to it and gather to himself his spirit and his breath, all flesh would perish together and man would return to dust.

From ヨブ記 第三四章一〇～一五節

## 8. 強気を砕く。

To crush the strong.

**Grammar Note:** It was also possible to use the 連体形 of adjectives as nominal phrases in older Japanese. This is still seen in set phrases or purposely old-fashioned statements like Ex. 8.

## Adjectival Elements in Sino-Japanese Compounds

normal

Have you noticed many compounds with translations with both an adjective and a noun? Many adjectival phrases that came into the language as "adjective + noun" were turned into nominal phrases in Japanese. Some become 形容動詞, but some don't. Why is this?

It's interesting to consider how 明るい and 暗い are both adjectives, but 明暗 is not. In fact, 明暗な is ungrammatical. You can say something like the following.

---

### Examples

#### 9. 明暗の対比

Light and dark contrast

Of course, there are times when you add two adjectival 漢字 and get a 形容動詞.

#### 10. 善良な市民

Good citizen

**漢字 Note:** 善 and 良 may be used to spell いい.

#### 11. 日本の希少な野生水生生物

Japan's scarce wild aquatic organisms

**漢字 Note:** 希 is a simplified spelling of 稀, which is in 稀な read as まれ to mean "rare". 少 is in 少ない.

The most interesting examples are things like 良法 (good method). These words tend to always be formal and 書き言葉. After all, this is a foreign construction. However, there are still plenty more examples that are commonly used words.

There is no morphology on the adjectival morpheme (meaning unit) 良 to function as an adjective. Thus, {よい・いい} 方法 would be more practical in speaking. Below are more examples of such words.

#### 12. だんかい す さめ 暖海に棲む鯨

A shark that lives in warm seas

**漢字 Note:** 棲 and 鯨 are not 常用漢字.

#### 13. しがいせん えいきょう ふせぐ 紫外線による影響を防ぐ。

To prevent effects from ultraviolet rays.



14. 生物の<sup>せいぶつ たようせい たも</sup>多様性を保つべきだ。

We should protect biological diversity.

15. 絶滅危惧の<sup>ぜつめつ き ぐ しょうすうげんご</sup>少数言語を守るプロジェクトを開始する。

To start a project for protecting endangered minority languages.

16. 良<sup>りょうやく</sup>薬は口<sup>にが</sup>に苦し。

Good medicine is bitter to the taste.

17. 彼には<sup>ぜんあく かんねん</sup>善悪の観念がない。

He cannot tell right from wrong.

18. 善<sup>ぜんい</sup>意 VS 悪<sup>あくい</sup>意

Good intent vs malice

## ナル形容動詞

These adjectives never made the complete jump to modern 形容動詞. All modern ones come from this class from Classical Japanese. There are still several that are used a lot, but they still often have a formal feeling simply because of their grammatically restrictive use.

Their old base set comes from the base set of the old copula verb なり, and they may show up in old proverbs and set phrases, but they are not necessary to know in order to use them. For completeness, they are provided below.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
なら-	なり-・に	なり	なる	なれ-	なれ

**Usage Note:** You can also use the なる-連体形 of current 形容動詞 and other attributive expressions in more neo-classical or formal texts. For instance, you might see 次なる instead of 次の.

---

### Examples

19a. 神<sup>しんでん</sup>殿は聖<sup>せい</sup>なる地であるはずです。

19b. 神<sup>しんれい</sup>殿は神霊な場所であるはずです。(More common)

A temple is supposed to be a holy place.

20. 受賞を大いなる喜びとする。  
To treat receiving the prize as a great joy.
21. 私たちはいくつかの聖なる地を訪れました。  
We visited some holy sites.
22. 七は聖なる数です。  
7 is a holy number.
23. 更なる支援を求めています。  
We are still seeking more aid.
- 24a. いかな（る）時でも（ちょっと古風）  
24b. どんな時でも（もっと自然）  
Any time
- 25a. 単なる噂にすぎない。  
25b. ただの噂にすぎない。  
It doesn't pass being a mere rumor.
26. 仕事が大いに捗った。  
My job has made good headway.

**Word Note:** 大いに comes from 大いなる, which happens to retain its adverbial form.

## タル形容動詞

As mentioned earlier in the introduction of this lesson, there is a defunct class of adjectival verbs in Japanese called タル形容動詞. As the name suggests, their attribute base is タル. In Modern Japanese the bases are typically limited to the と-連用形 and the たる-連体形. The と-連用形 can make adverbs. Most are in decline. Their attribute base can be replaced with とした. Some have acquired other legitimate attributive forms. For instance, you can use 主な and 主たる (principal/main).

- 27a. 主たる理由はこれです。（古風）  
27b. 主な理由はこれです。（もっと自然）  
The main reason is this.

28. 全然たる狂人  
An absolute maniac

normal

29. {名立たる・有名な} 観光地  
A famous tourist spot

30. 面前での 嘲 笑 は侮辱の最たるものだ。  
Scorn in one's presence is the extremity of insult.

31a. 最たる例 (古風)

31b. 最も顕著な例 (自然)  
Prime example

32. 人間の活動の最たるもの  
The prime thing to human activity

33. 堂々 {たる・とした} 姿  
A magnificent figure

34. 断固 {たる・とした} 決意  
Resolute determination

35. 淡々 {たる・とした} 口調で話す。  
To speak in a cool tone.

36. 漠然とした不安  
Vague anxiety

37. 純 然たる銀行  
Pure and simple bank

## 第200課: Interjections

There are several terms for "interjection". They may be called 感動詞, 間投詞, or 感嘆詞.

Interjections may be outbursts of emotion while others are simply greetings (挨拶). Some are nasty pejoratives, others simply internet slang. Due to this diversity, we are going to study interjections with the following categories.

Emotional Interjections	感動詞
Interjections of Yelling	かけ声の間投詞
Interjections of Response	応答の間投詞

Interjections of Appeal	呼びかけの間投詞
Interjections of Salutation	挨拶の間投詞
Slang Interjections	俗語的な間投詞
Onomatopoeic Interjections	擬声語的な間投詞

This lesson won't show every interjection nor every variant, but this should hopefully help find about the most important ones.

## Emotional Interjections

Ah	ああ	It can be used to show surprise, grief, joy, etc. and also as a light response. In the latter case it's often just あ.
Oh	おう・おお	Used when moved (emotionally) by something, sudden remember something, or agree with something.
Thank you	どうもありがとう・ おおきに・サン キュー・三Q	大きに is famous for being from Kansai Dialects. サンキュー comes from English and is used in casual settings. The second spelling is common in internet slang.
Oh my	おや（おや）	It shows a little distrust when met with something unexpected.
My, my	おやまあ	
Huh	まったく	
Goodness	やれ（やれ）	Used when relieved, tired, dejected, and bewildered.

## Interjections of Yelling

ああ・わあ	Ah	わあ is often used by females but not limited to them. The adverb わあと also exists.
よいしょ		Sound of when you are lifting up something heavy.
えいや		Sound one makes when pulling something with strength.
おい	Hey!	Comes from Satsuguu Dialect for punishing people.
おっと	Oops	Used mainly by middle-aged people and older.
乾杯	Cheers	

きゃー	Eek	
ふん	Pssh	
しまった	Dang/damn	
図星	Bull's-eye	
畜生	Damn you	
はくしょん	Achoo	
ファック	F***	This is not used like in English frequency-wise, and it's not a given that the speaker knows it is a bad word in English.
ヤッホー	Yo-ho	
もう	Jeez	
すごい	Awesome	
やった	# did it!	

Notes:

1. The first shows how っ can make more emphasis, and this can be used for other adjectives. The latter contraction, which can also occur for 形容詞 ending in おい, あい, うい, and いい to えー, which is done in standard speech by men in casual situations. It depends on the region if women get to use this contraction or not.

### Examples

やんやの喝采になってしまった。

It ended up becoming a thunderous applause.

## Interjections of Response

		Notes
Ah	ああ・あ	
Uh; um	あの（う）	
Well	じゃあ・さあ・まあ	See below
Um	えーと	えーと is a very casual spelling. ええと and えっと are regular spellings.

normal

No	い (い) え・い や・うん・や (一) だ	やだ is quite casual and is more like "that's bad".
Yes	はい・ええ・うん	
OK	OK・オーケー	
Eh?	え (っ)	May show doubt when surprised at something or when you want something to be repeated.
Oh, yes?	へえ	Shows surprise at something.
Sorry	・ ごめんなさい ・ 申しわけありません ・ すみません	
Uh-huh	しか	
Yeah	そうですね	This is even said when you will then show disagreement. In that case, it would be followed with something like そうかといって.
Not at all	とんでもない	See below.
What?	何	Of course, it has variants like 何だ.
Indeed	なるほど	Used in agreement or recognition of what someone said.
Let me see	はて・はてな	Used when one is suspecting or thinking about something.
Not really	別に	Maybe accompanied by the verb that is omitted.
No use arguing	問答無用	
Rodger	了解	
Wow	あら	Often used by women.
Of course	もちろん	
Hey there; I say	これは (これは)	

### さあ VS まあ VS じゃあ

Though all translated with relatively the same word "well", these three interjections aren't

normal

exactly the same, and they're used in different situations for different emotive effects.

さあ can be used to urge or invite someone to do something. It may be used to bolster oneself or even used when one is confused or troubled. It can also be the well in "well, that's done".

まあ is quite different. Women often use it whenever they're shocked, relieved, etc. In general, however, it can be used to suggest that something is not completely all right, but that it will suffice for now. Or, it can be used to pacify someone and tell them to do something for the time being.

じゃあ・じゃ・では is like "ok now". It can be used like それでは as "then", which can also be してみるお. It can even be used to switch over to another conversation.

---

### とんでもない

It can be used to completely reject another's idea and is equivalent to めっそうもない. It can also be used like とほうもない, which means "outrageous/absurd". It can be seen as "no kidding!". It's often used in a negative fashion.

In polite speech it can be more easily interpreted as "it's nothing". Or, it can be used in the sense of "don't mention it". Of course, a lot of this has to deal with context and tone of voice. For its meaning "unthinkable", it is interchangeable with とんだ・思いのほかの, which are both attributive expressions.

## Interjections of Appeal

Sh!	しーっ
I'm leaving	行ってきます
Have a nice day	行ってらっしゃい
Wait	ちょっと
Please	お願いします・どうぞ
Pretty please	かなりしてください
Hello (on the telephone)	もしもし
Good job	あっぱれ・グッジョブ
Excuse me	失礼します
Help	助けて

I'm home	ただいま
----------	------

## Interjections of Salutation

So long	あばよ
Welcome home	お帰りなさい
Congratulations	おめでとう（ございます）
Happy birthday	（お）誕生日おめでとう（ございます）
Good morning	おはようございます
Good afternoon	今日は
Good evening	今晚は
Good night	お休みなさい
How are you?; farewell	ご機嫌よう
Farewell	さよ（う）なら・さらば
See you later	また明日・あとで
What's up?	どう
Bye	ばい・バイバイ
Long time no see	久しぶりですね・久々・調子はどう？
Merry Christmas	メリークリ（スマス）
Yo!; Wow!	やあ
Nice to meet you	どうぞよろしく・初めまして

## Slangish Interjections

What's up	おっす
Here it comes	キタ
Nice to meet you	4649 (Internet)
Lol	笑・www (Internet)・ワロタ



**Usage Note:** Words that come from the infamous site 2ちゃんねる are deemed to be used by people with low intelligence. So, avoid using フロタ.

## Onomatopoeic Interjections

Ook	ウキー
Caw	カー
Ook ook	きーきー
Yuck	げっ
Ribbit ribbit	げろげろ
Cock-a-doodle-doo	こけこっこー
Purr; meow	ごろごろ・にゃあ
Baa baa	めーめー